



DATA BOOK

INVERTER MULTI-SPLIT SYSTEM RESIDENTIAL AIR-CONDITIONERS (Split system, air to air heat pump type)

(OUTDOOR UNIT)

SCM30ZS-W
41ZS-W

(INDOOR UNIT)

Wall mounted type

SRK15ZS-WF,-WFB,-WFT
20ZS-W,-WB,-WT,-WF,-WFB,-WFT
25ZS-W,-WB,-WT,-WF,-WFB,-WFT
35ZS-W,-WB,-WT,-WF,-WFB,-WFT

SKM15ZSP-W
20ZSP-W
25ZSP-W
35ZSP-W

CONTENTS

| | |
|---|-----------|
| 1. OUTDOOR UNITS | 4 |
| 1.1 Specifications | 4 |
| 1.2 Exterior dimensions | 6 |
| 1.3 Electrical wiring | 8 |
| 1.4 Noise level | 10 |
| 1.5 Application data | 13 |
| 2. INDOOR UNITS | 25 |
| 2.1 Specifications | 25 |
| (1) Wall mounted type (SRK-ZS series) | 25 |
| (2) Wall mounted type (SKM-ZSP series) | 29 |
| 2.2 Exterior dimensions | 33 |
| (1) Wall mounted type (SRK-ZS series) | 33 |
| (2) Wall mounted type (SKM-ZSP series) | 34 |
| (3) Remote control | 35 |
| 2.3 Electrical wiring | 38 |
| (1) Wall mounted type (SRK-ZS series) | 38 |
| (2) Wall mounted type (SKM-ZSP series) | 40 |
| 2.4 Noise level | 41 |
| (1) Wall mounted type (SRK-ZS series) | 41 |
| (2) Wall mounted type (SKM-ZSP series) | 51 |
| 2.5 Application data | 59 |
| (1) Wall mounted type (SRK-ZS series) | 59 |
| (2) Wall mounted type (SKM-ZSP series) | 67 |
| 3. PIPING SYSTEMS | 71 |
| (1) Model SCM30ZS-W | 71 |
| (2) Model SCM41ZS-W | 72 |
| 4. RANGE OF USAGE & LIMITATIONS | 73 |
| 5. TABLE OF INDOOR UNIT COMBINATIONS | 74 |
| (1) Model SCM30ZS-W | 74 |
| (2) Model SCM41ZS-W | 75 |
| 6. SELECTION CHARTS | 76 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| 7. OPTION PARTS | 77 |
| 7.1 Wired remote control | 77 |
| 7.2 Simple wired remote control (RCH-E3) | 93 |
| 7.3 Interface kit (SC-BIKN2-E) | 99 |
| 7.4 Superlink E board (SC-ADNA-E) | 103 |
| 8. TECHNICAL INFORMATION | 105 |
| (1) Model SCM30ZS-W | 105 |
| (2) Model SCM41ZS-W | 106 |

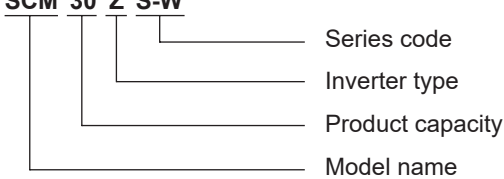
■ Table of models

| Type | Indoor unit | Outdoor unit to be combined | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| | Model | SCM30ZS-W | SCM41ZS-W |
| Wall mounted type | SRK15ZS-WF, -WFB, -WFT | ○ | ○ |
| | 20ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT | ○ | ○ |
| | 25ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT | ○ | ○ |
| | 35ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT | - | ○ |
| | SKM15ZSP-W | ○ | ○ |
| | 20ZSP-W | ○ | ○ |
| | 25ZSP-W | ○ | ○ |
| | 35ZSP-W | - | ○ |

■ How to read the model name

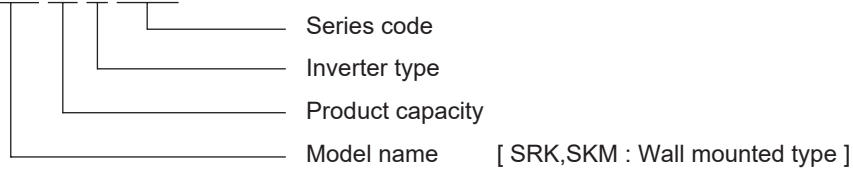
Outdoor unit

Example: **SCM 30 Z S-W**



Indoor unit

Example: **SRK 20 Z S-WF**



1. OUTDOOR UNITS

1.1 Specifications

(1) Model SCM30ZS-W

| Item | | Model | SCM30ZS-W | | | | |
|---|---|------------------------|---|---|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| Cooling capacity (1) | | W | 3000 (1400 (Min.) - 5000 (Max.)) | | | | |
| Heating capacity (1) | | W | 4000 (1000 (Min.) - 5700 (Max.)) | | | | |
| Heating capacity (H2) | | W | — | | | | |
| Power source | | | 1 Phase, 220 - 240 V, 50Hz/ 220V, 60Hz | | | | |
| Operation data (1) | Power consumption | Cooling | kW | 0.52 (0.32 - 1.60) | | | |
| | | Heating | | 0.74 (0.25 - 1.49) | | | |
| | | Heating (H2) | | — | | | |
| | Running current | Cooling | A | 2.7 / 2.5 / 2.4 (220/ 230/ 240 V) | | | |
| | | Heating | | 3.5 / 3.4 / 3.2 (220/ 230/ 240 V) | | | |
| | Inrush current, max current | | | 3.4 Max. 14 | | | |
| | EER | Cooling | | 5.77 | | | |
| | | Heating | | 5.41 | | | |
| | | Heating (H2) | | — | | | |
| | Sound power level | Cooling | dB(A) | 62 | | | |
| | | Heating | | 64 | | | |
| | Sound pressure level | Cooling | dB(A) | 49 | | | |
| Heating | | 51 | | | | | |
| Silent mode | Cooling | | 44 | | | | |
| | Heating | | 45 | | | | |
| Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth) | | mm | 595 x 780(+90) x 290 | | | | |
| Exterior appearance (Munsell color) | | | Stucco white (4.2Y 7.5/1.1) near equivalent | | | | |
| Net weight | | kg | 35.5 | | | | |
| Refrigerant equipment | Compressor type & Q'ty | | 9RS102ZBE21 (Rotary type) x 1 | | | | |
| | Motor (Starting method) | | kW | 1.5 (Inverter driven) | | | |
| | Refrigerant oil | | L | 0.32 (FW50S) | | | |
| | Refrigerant (4) | | kg | R32 1.25 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 30m) | | | |
| | Heat exchanger | | | M fins & inner grooved tubing | | | |
| | Refrigerant control | | | Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve | | | |
| | Device control | | | Microcomputer control | | | |
| Air handling equipment | Fan type & Q'ty | | Propeller fan x 1 | | | | |
| | Motor | | W | 24 | | | |
| | Air flow | Cooling | m ³ /min | 32.5 | | | |
| Heating | | 32.5 | | | | | |
| Shock & vibration absorber | | | Rubber sleeve (for compressor) | | | | |
| Electric heater | | | — | | | | |
| Safety devices | | | Compressor overheat protection, Overcurrent protection, Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Outdoor fan motor error protection, Heating & Cooling overload protection | | | | |
| Installation data | Refrigerant piping size (O.D) | | mm | Liquid line: ϕ 6.35 (1/4") x 2 Gas line: ϕ 9.52 (3/8") x 2 | | | |
| | Connecting method | | | Flare connecting | | | |
| | Insulation for piping | | | Necessary (Both sides), independent | | | |
| | Length for one indoor unit | | m | Max. 25 | | | |
| | Total length for all rooms | | | Max. 30 | | | |
| | Vertical height difference between outdoor unit and indoor unit | | | Max. 15 (Outdoor unit is higher) Max. 15 (Outdoor unit is lower) | | | |
| | Height difference of the indoor units | | | Max. 25 | | | |
| Recommended breaker size | | A | 25 | | | | |
| Connection wiring | Size x Core number | | 1.5mm ² x 4 cores (Including earth cable) | | | | |
| | Connecting method | | Terminal block (Screw fixing type) | | | | |
| IP number | | | IPX4 | | | | |
| Accessories (included) | | | Installation sheet, Elbow, Grommet | | | | |
| Indoor unit to be combined | | | SRK15ZS-WF,-WFB,-WFT SRK20,25ZS-W,-WB,-WT,-WF,-WFB,-WFT SKM15,20,25ZSP-W | | | | |
| Number of connectable indoor units | | | 2 | | | | |
| Total of indoor units | | kW | Max. 5.0 | | | | |
| Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions. The pipe length for one indoor unit is 5m. | | | | | | | |
| Operation | Item | Indoor air temperature | | Outdoor air temperature | | Standards | |
| | | DB | WB | DB | WB | | |
| | Cooling | 27°C | 19°C | 35°C | 24°C | | ISO15042-T1 |
| | Heating | 20°C | — | 7°C | 6°C | | ISO15042-H1 |
| Heating (H2) | 20°C | — | 2°C | 1°C | ISO15042-H2 | | |
| (2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO. | | | | | | | |
| (3) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively. | | | | | | | |
| (4) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 20m connecting piping. (Purging is not required even for the short piping.) | | | | | | | |

(2) Model SCM41ZS-W

| Item | | Model | SCM41ZS-W | | | |
|---|---|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Cooling capacity (1) | | W | 4000 (1400 (Min.) - 6300 (Max.)) | | | |
| Heating capacity (1) | | W | 4500 (1000 (Min.) - 6900 (Max.)) | | | |
| Heating capacity (H2) | | W | — | | | |
| Power source | | | 1 Phase, 220 - 240 V, 50Hz/ 220V, 60Hz | | | |
| Operation data (1) | Power consumption | Cooling | 0.72 (0.32 - 1.65) | | | |
| | | Heating | 0.81 (0.25 - 1.58) | | | |
| | | Heating (H2) | — | | | |
| | Running current | Cooling | A | 3.4 / 3.3 / 3.2 (220/ 230/ 240 V) | | |
| | | Heating | A | 3.8 / 3.7 / 3.5 (220/ 230/ 240 V) | | |
| | Inrush current, max current | | | 3.7 Max. 15 | | |
| | EER | Cooling | | 5.56 | | |
| | | Heating | | 5.56 | | |
| | COP | Heating (H2) | | — | | |
| | | Cooling | | — | | |
| | Sound power level | Cooling | dB(A) | 62 | | |
| | | Heating | dB(A) | 64 | | |
| Sound pressure level | Cooling | dB(A) | 49 | | | |
| | Heating | dB(A) | 52 | | | |
| Silent mode | Cooling | dB(A) | 43 | | | |
| | Heating | dB(A) | 44 | | | |
| Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth) | | mm | 640 x850(+65) x 290 | | | |
| Exterior appearance (Munsell color) | | | Stucco white (4.2Y 7.5/1.1) near equivalent | | | |
| Net weight | | kg | 42.5 | | | |
| Refrigerant equipment | Compressor type & Q'ty | | 9RS102ZBE21 (Rotary type) x 1 | | | |
| | Motor (Starting method) | | kW 1.5 (Inverter driven) | | | |
| | Refrigerant oil | | L 0.32 (FW50S) | | | |
| | Refrigerant (4) | | kg R32 1.6 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 40m) | | | |
| | Heat exchanger | | M fins & inner grooved tubing | | | |
| | Refrigerant control | | Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve | | | |
| Device control | | Microcomputer control | | | | |
| Air handling equipment | Fan type & Q'ty | | Propeller fan x 1 | | | |
| | Motor | | W 34 | | | |
| | Air flow | Cooling | m ³ /min 41.0 | | | |
| Heating | | m ³ /min 41.0 | | | | |
| Shock & vibration absorber | | | Rubber sleeve (for compressor) | | | |
| Electric heater | | | — | | | |
| Safety devices | | | Compressor overheat protection, Overcurrent protection, Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Outdoor fan motor error protection, Heating & Cooling overload protection | | | |
| Installation data | Refrigerant piping size (O.D) | | mm Liquid line: φ 6.35 (1/4") × 3 Gas line: φ 9.52 (3/8") × 3 | | | |
| | Connecting method | | Flare connecting | | | |
| | Insulation for piping | | Necessary (Both sides), independent | | | |
| | Length for one indoor unit | | m Max. 25 | | | |
| | Total length for all rooms | | m Max. 40 | | | |
| | Vertical height difference between outdoor unit and indoor unit | | m Max. 15 (Outdoor unit is higher) Max. 15 (Outdoor unit is lower) | | | |
| Height difference of the indoor units | | m Max. 25 | | | | |
| Recommended breaker size | | A | 25 | | | |
| Connection wiring | Size x Core number | | 1.5mm ² x 4 cores (Including earth cable) | | | |
| | Connecting method | | Terminal block (Screw fixing type) | | | |
| IP number | | | IPX4 | | | |
| Accessories (included) | | | Installation sheet, Elbow, Grommet | | | |
| Indoor unit to be combined | | | SRK15ZS-WF,-WFB,-WFT SRK20,25,35ZS-W,-WB,-WT,-WF,-WFB,-WFT SKM15,20,25,35ZSP-W | | | |
| Number of connectable indoor units | | | Min. 2 - Max. 3 | | | |
| Total of indoor units | | kW | Max. 7.0 | | | |
| Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions. The pipe length for one indoor unit is 5m. | | | | | | |
| Operation | Item | Indoor air temperature | | Outdoor air temperature | | Standards |
| | | DB | WB | DB | WB | |
| | Cooling | 27°C | 19°C | 35°C | 24°C | ISO15042-T1 |
| | Heating | 20°C | — | 7°C | 6°C | ISO15042-H1 |
| Heating (H2) | 20°C | — | 2°C | 1°C | ISO15042-H2 | |
| (2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO. | | | | | | |
| (3) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively. | | | | | | |
| (4) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 20m connecting piping. (Purging is not required even for the short piping.) | | | | | | |

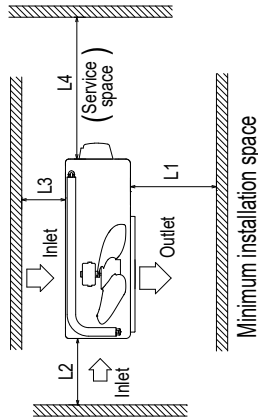
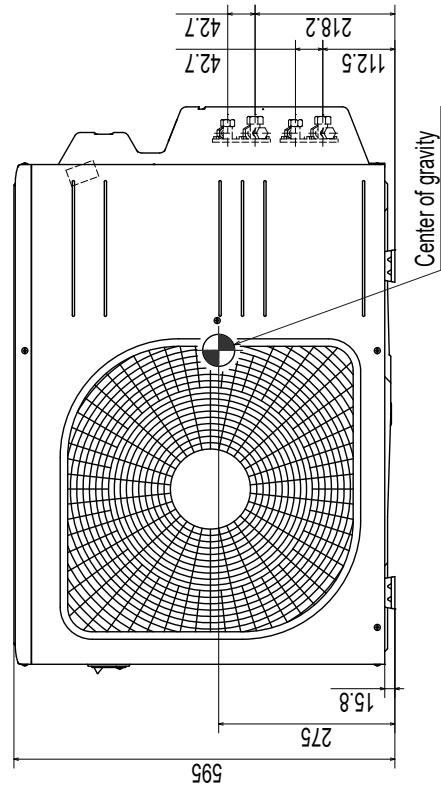
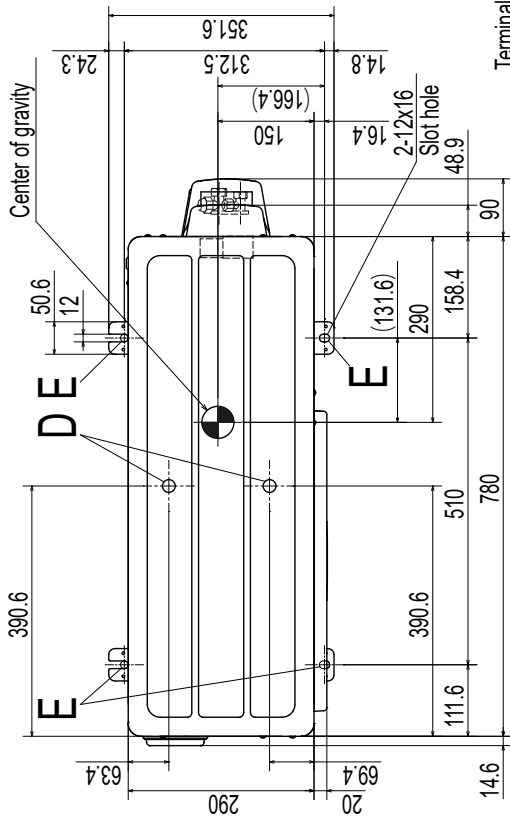
1.2 Exterior dimensions

(1) Model SCM30ZS-W

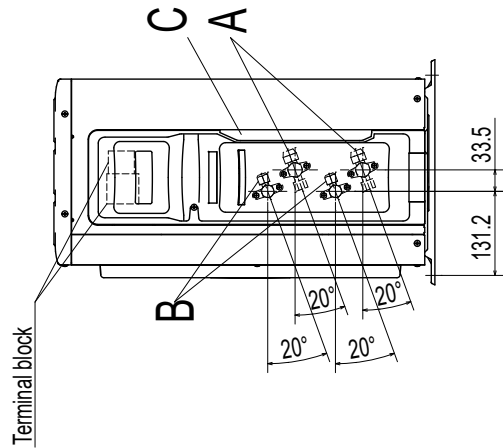
Notes

- (1) The unit must not be surrounded by walls on the four sides.
- (2) The unit must be fixed with anchor bolts. An anchor bolt must not protrude more than 15mm.
- (3) If the unit is installed in the location where there is a possibility of strong winds, place the unit such that the direction of air from the outlet gets perpendicular to the wind direction.
- (4) Leave 200mm or more space above the unit.
- (5) The wall height on the outlet side should be 1200mm or less.
- (6) The model name label is attached on the right side of the unit.

| Symbol | Content |
|--------|--|
| A | Service valve connection (gas side) $\phi 9.52(3/8")$ (Flare) |
| B | Service valve connection (liquid side) $\phi 6.35(1/4")$ (Flare) |
| C | Pipe / cable draw-out hole |
| D | Drain discharge hole $\phi 20 \times 2$ places |
| E | Anchor bolt hole M10-12 $\times 4$ places |



| | Installation space |
|----|--------------------|
| L1 | 280 or more |
| L2 | 100 or more |
| L3 | 80 or more |
| L4 | 250 or more |



Unit:mm

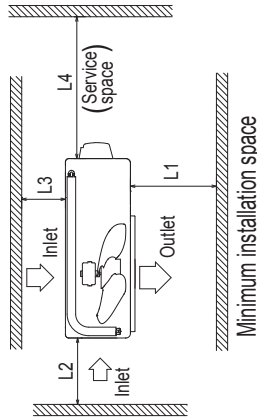
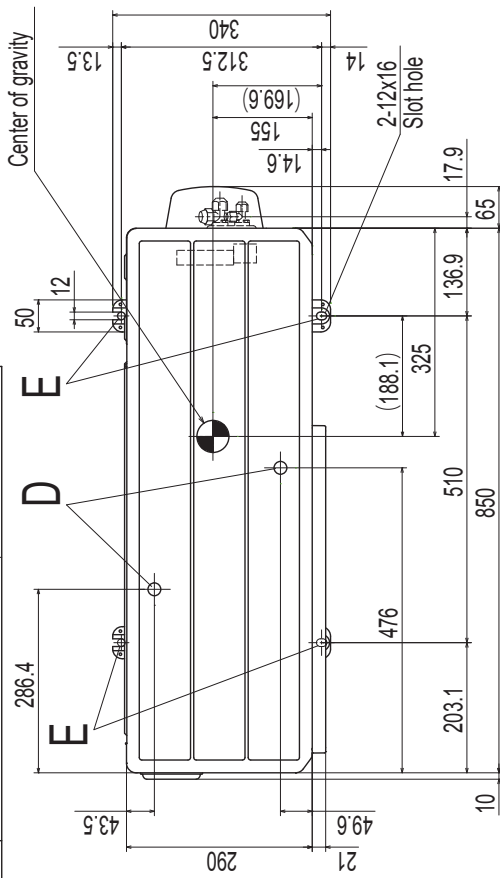
RWC000Z349

(2) Model SCM41ZS-W

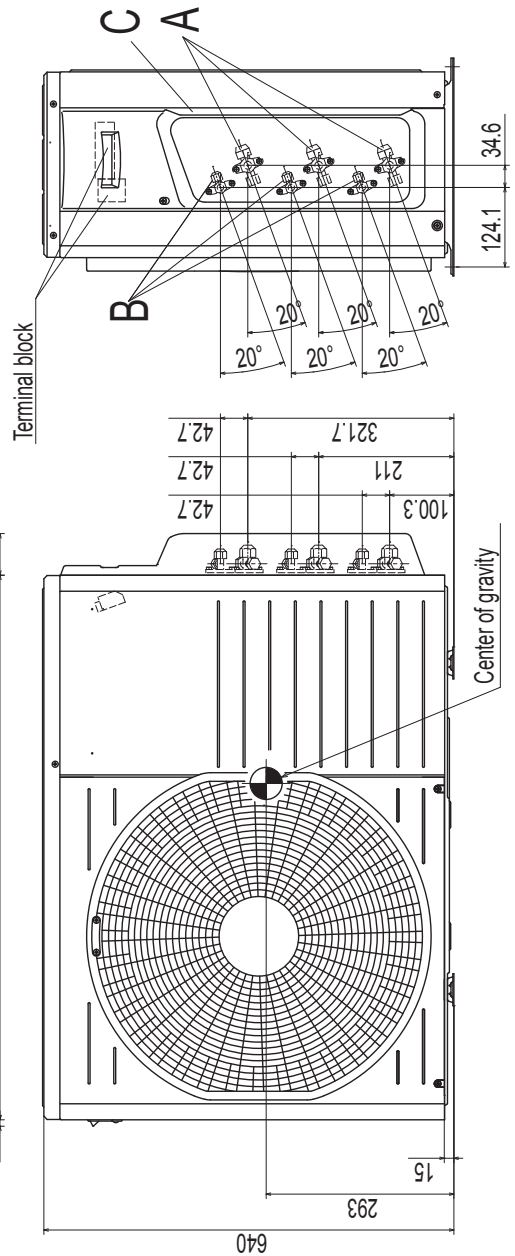
Notes

- (1) The unit must not be surrounded by walls on the four sides.
- (2) The unit must be fixed with anchor bolts. An anchor bolt must not protrude more than 15mm.
- (3) If the unit is installed in the location where there is a possibility of strong winds, place the unit such that the direction of air from the outlet gets perpendicular to the wind direction.
- (4) Leave 200mm or more space above the unit.
- (5) The wall height on the outlet side should be 1200mm or less.
- (6) The model name label is attached on the right side of the unit.

| Symbol | Content |
|--------|---|
| A | Service valve connection (gas side) $\phi 9.52(3/8)$ (Flare) |
| B | Service valve connection (liquid side) $\phi 6.35(1/4)$ (Flare) |
| C | Pipe / cable draw-out hole |
| D | Drain discharge hole $\phi 20 \times 2$ places |
| E | Anchor bolt hole M10-12 \times 4 places |



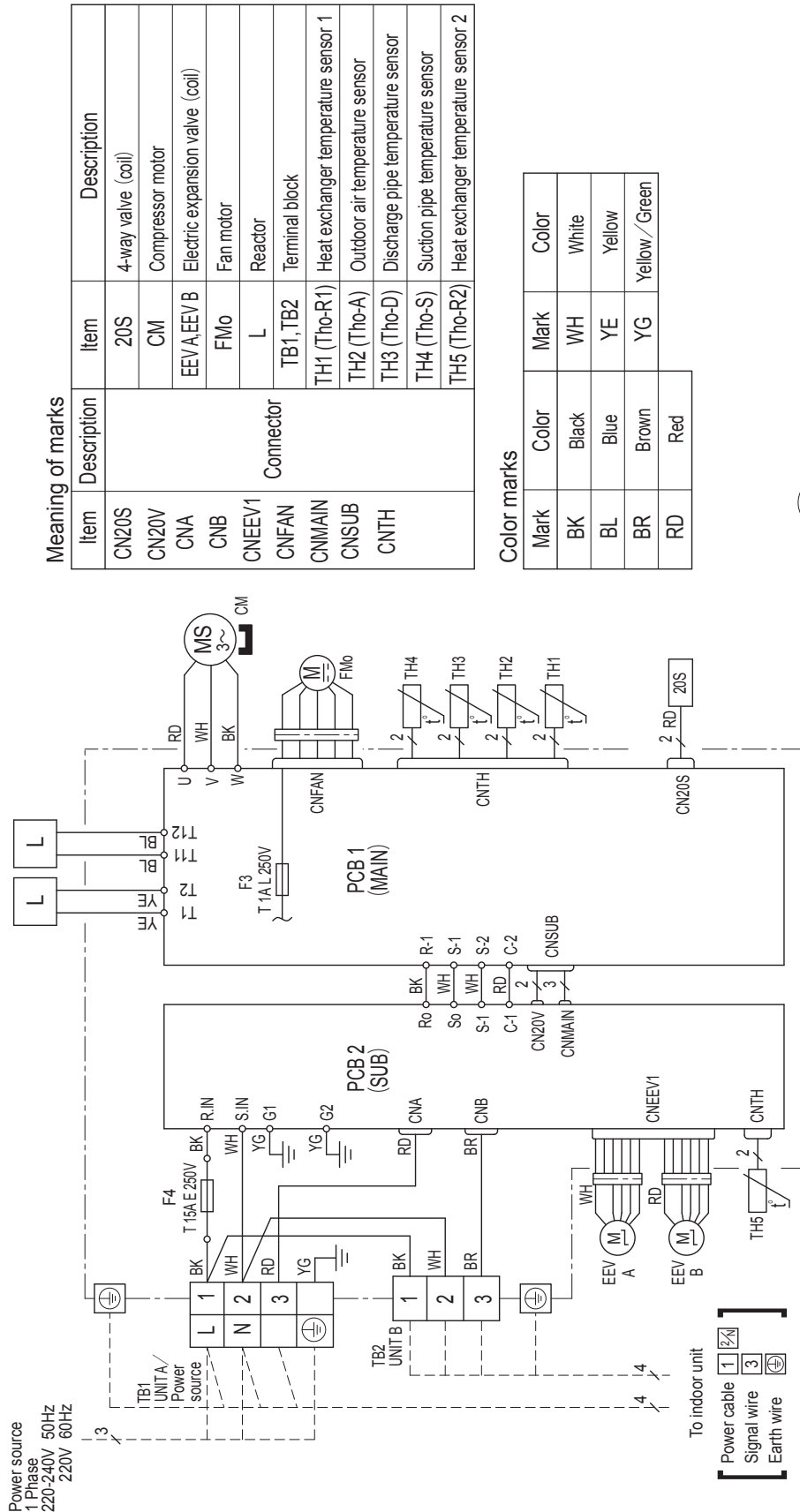
| Installation space | Requirement |
|--------------------|--|
| L1 | 600 or more |
| L2 | 100 or more |
| L3 | 100 or more |
| L4 | No obstacles (Service space or electrical parts) |



Unit:mm

RWC000Z351

1.3 Electrical wiring (1) Model SCM30ZS-W

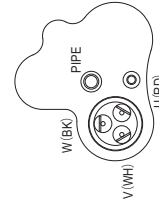


Meaning of marks

| Item | Description | Item | Description |
|--------|-------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| CN20S | | 20S | 4-way valve (coil) |
| CN20V | | CM | Compressor motor |
| CNA | | EEVAEEVB | Electric expansion valve (coil) |
| CNB | | FMo | Fan motor |
| CNEEV1 | | L | Reactor |
| CNFAN | Connector | TB1, TB2 | Terminal block |
| CNMAIN | | TH1 (Tho-R1) | Heat exchanger temperature sensor 1 |
| CNSUB | | TH2 (Tho-A) | Outdoor air temperature sensor |
| CNTH | | TH3 (Tho-D) | Discharge pipe temperature sensor |
| | | TH4 (Tho-S) | Suction pipe temperature sensor |
| | | TH5 (Tho-R2) | Heat exchanger temperature sensor 2 |

Color marks

| Mark | Color | Mark | Color |
|------|-------|------|----------------|
| BK | Black | WH | White |
| BL | Blue | YE | Yellow |
| BR | Brown | YG | Yellow / Green |
| RD | Red | | |



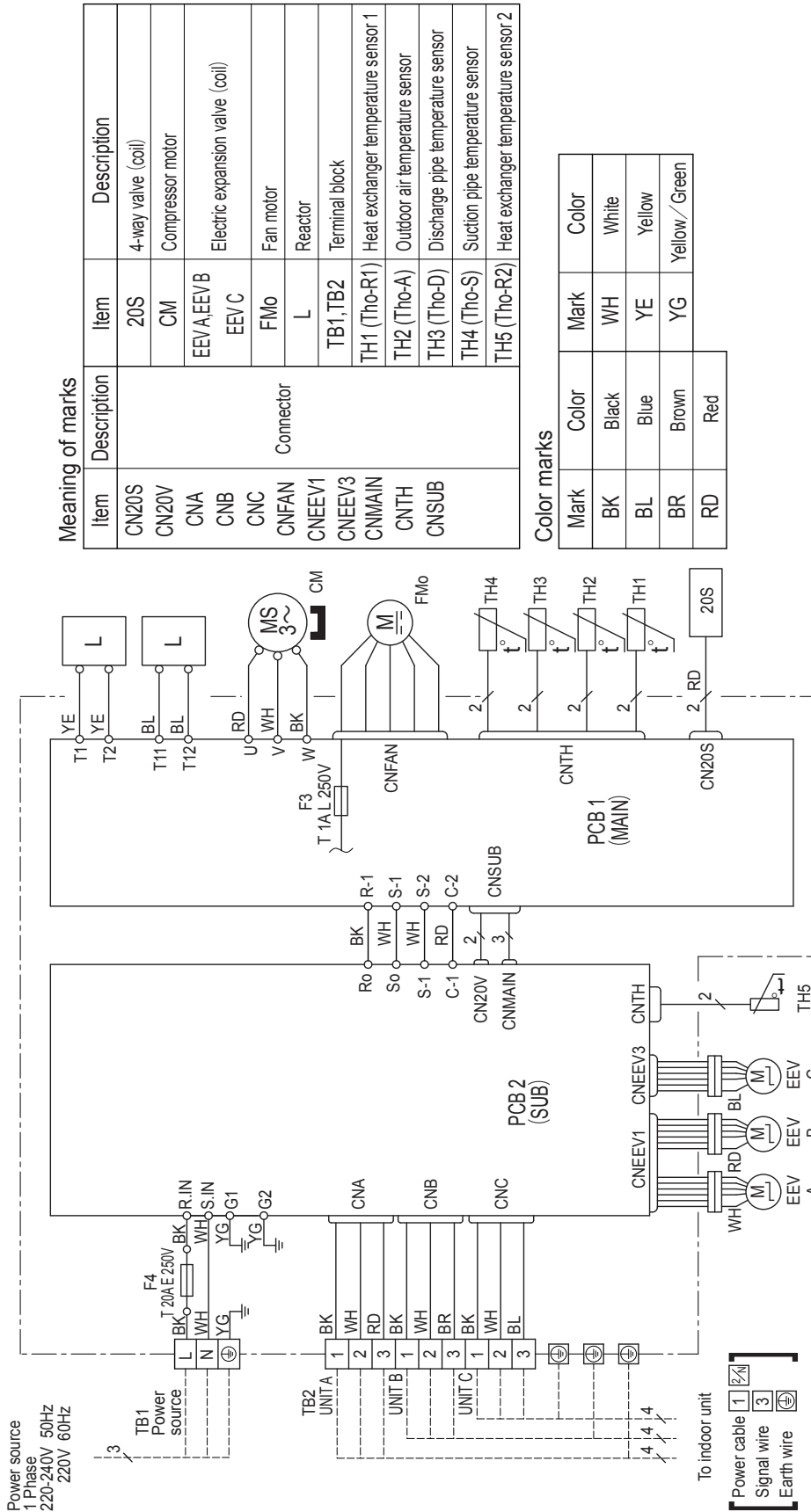
Compressor terminal block

Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

| Model name | MAX running current (A) | Power cable wire size x number* | Power cable length (m) | Connecting cable wire size x number* |
|------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| SCM30ZS-W | 14 | 2.5mm ² x 3 | 18 | 1.5mm ² x 4 |

* The wire numbers include earth wire (Yellow / Green)
 • Switchgear or circuit breaker capacity should be chosen according to national or regional electricity regulations.
 • The power cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the national or regional electricity regulations.

(2) Model SCM41ZS-W

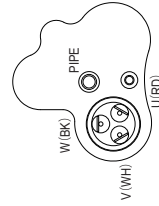


Meaning of marks

| Item | Description | Item | Description |
|--------|-------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| CN20S | | 20S | 4-way valve (coil) |
| CN20V | | CM | Compressor motor |
| CNA | | EEVA,EEVB | Electric expansion valve (coil) |
| CNB | | EEV C | |
| CNC | | FMo | Fan motor |
| CNFAN | Connector | L | Reactor |
| CNEEV1 | | TB1, TB2 | Terminal block |
| CNEEV3 | | TH1 (Tho-R1) | Heat exchanger temperature sensor 1 |
| CNMAIN | | TH2 (Tho-A) | Outdoor air temperature sensor |
| CNTH | | TH3 (Tho-D) | Discharge pipe temperature sensor |
| CNSUB | | TH4 (Tho-S) | Suction pipe temperature sensor |
| | | TH5 (Tho-R2) | Heat exchanger temperature sensor 2 |

Color marks

| Mark | Color | Mark | Color |
|------|-------|------|--------------|
| BK | Black | WH | White |
| BL | Blue | YE | Yellow |
| BR | Brown | YG | Yellow/Green |
| RD | Red | | |



Compressor terminal block

Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

| Model name | MAX running current (A) | Power cable wire size x number * | Power cable length (m) | Connecting cable wire size x number * |
|------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| SCM41ZS-W | 15 | 2.5mm ² x 3 | 17 | 1.5mm ² x 4 |

- * The wire numbers include earth wire (Yellow/Green)
- Switchgear or circuit breaker capacity should be chosen according to national or regional electricity regulations.
- The power cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the national or regional electricity regulations.

1.4 Noise level

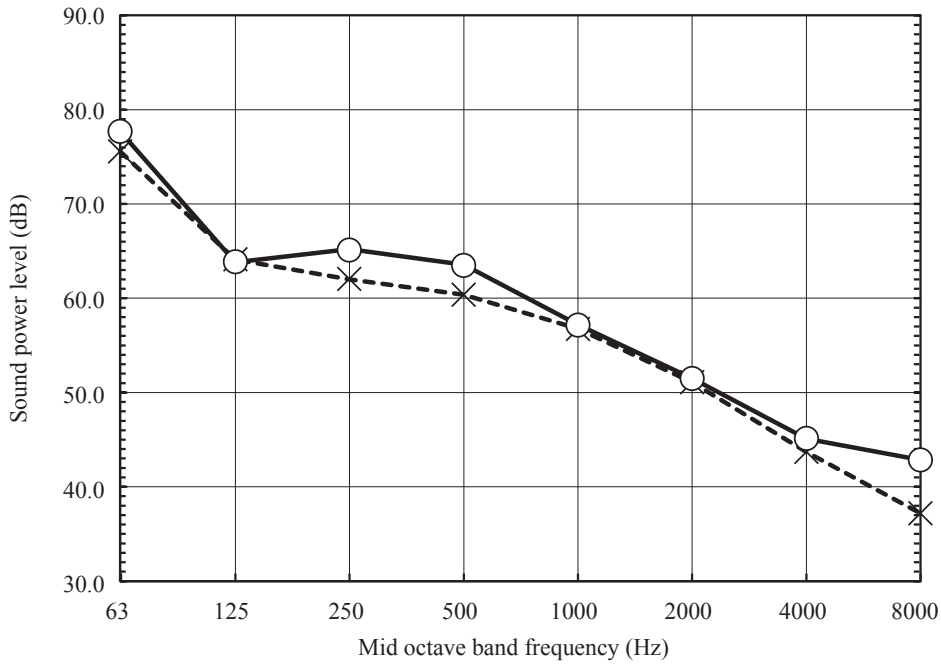
(1) Sound power level

(a) Model SCM30ZS-W

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 62 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 64 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| Mode | Rated capacity value |

x Cooling, ○ — Heating

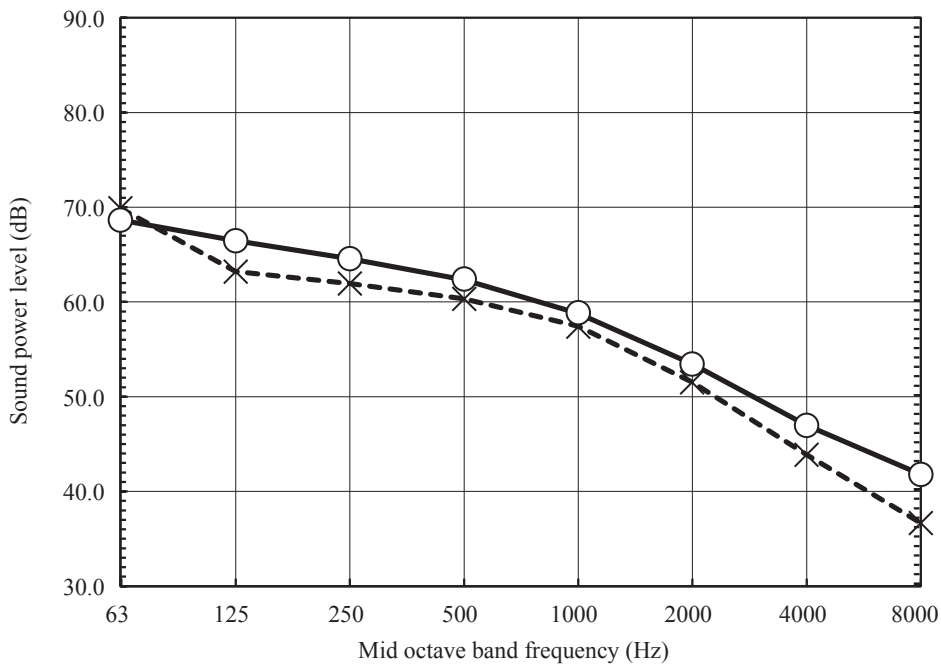


(b) Model SCM41ZS-W

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 62 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 64 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| Mode | Rated capacity value |

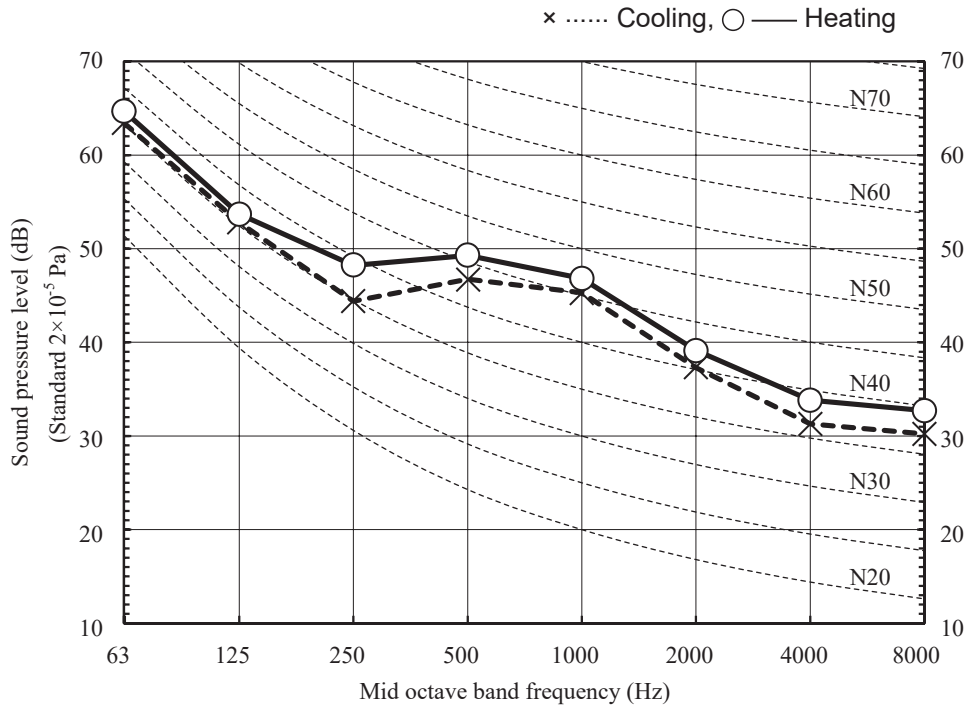
x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(2) Sound pressure level
 (a) Rated capacity value
 (i) Model SCM30ZS-W

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 49 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 51 dB(A) |

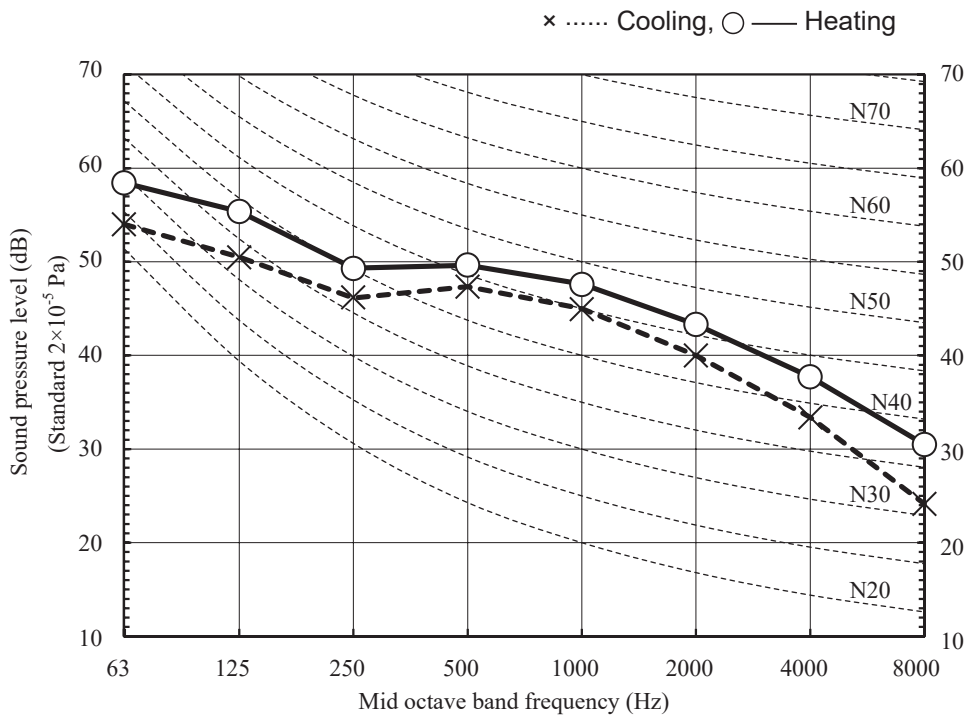
| | |
|-----------|----------------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| Mode | Rated capacity value |



(ii) Model SCM41ZS-W

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 49 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 52 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| Mode | Rated capacity value |

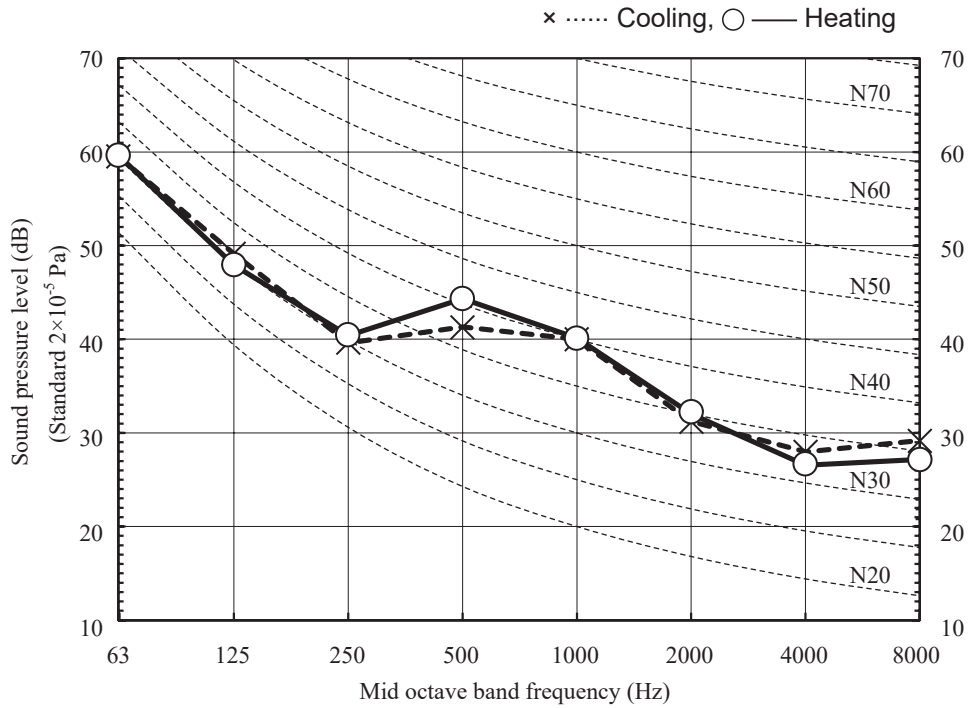


(b) Silent mode

(i) Model SCM30ZS-W

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 44 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 45 dB(A) |

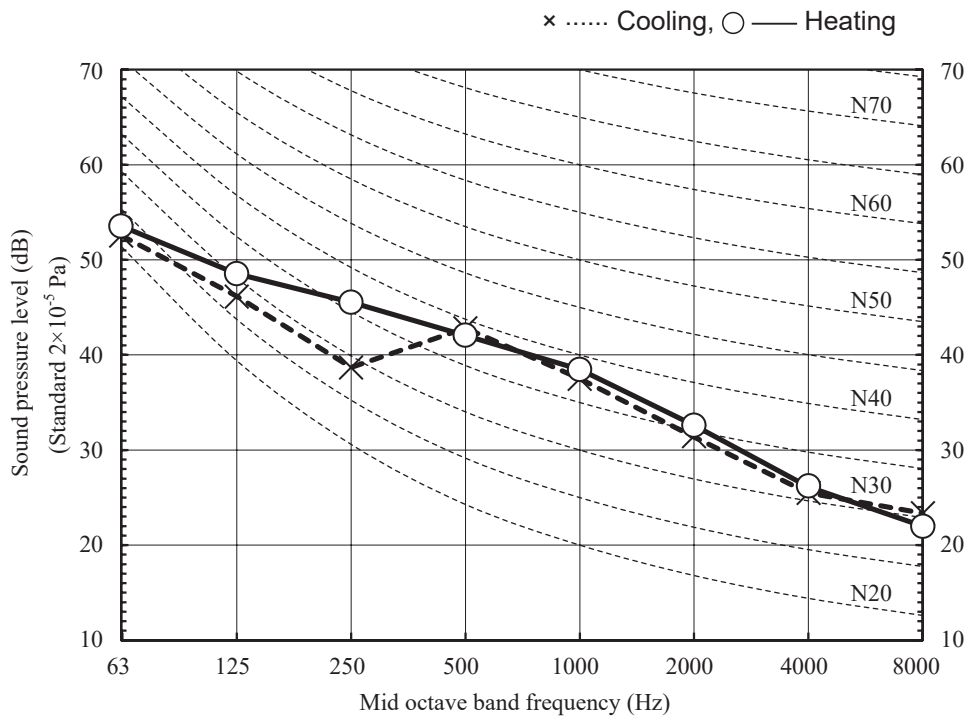
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| Mode | Silent |



(ii) Model SCM41ZS-W

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 43 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 44 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| Mode | Silent |



1.5 Application data

(1) Installation of outdoor unit

(a) Model SCM30ZS-W

RPC012A205

Model SCM30/40/45ZS-W
R32 REFRIGERANT USED

• This installation manual deals with an outdoor unit installation only. For an indoor unit installation, refer to page 59.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Before installation, read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully and strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
 - The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, **⚠ WARNING** and **⚠ CAUTION**.
 - ⚠ WARNING** Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in serious consequences such as death or severe injury.
 - ⚠ CAUTION** Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in personal injury or property damage.
- Both mention the important items to protect your health and safety. Therefore, strictly follow them by any means.



⚠ WARNING

- **Be sure to use only for residential purpose.**
If this unit is installed in inferior environment such as machine shop, vehicle (like ship), warehouse, etc., it can malfunction.
- **Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer completely in accordance with the installation manual.**
Installation by an unqualified person or incorrect installation can cause serious troubles such as water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Be sure to wear protective goggles and gloves while performing installation work.**
Improper safety measures can result in personal injury.
- **Use the original accessories and the specified components for the installation.**
Using parts other than those prescribed may cause water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of flammable gases can occur.**
If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire resulting in property damage and personal injury.
- **When installing the unit in small rooms, make sure that refrigerant density does not exceed the limit (Reference: ISO5149) in the event of leakage.**
If refrigerant density exceeds the limit, consult the dealer and install the ventilation system. Otherwise lack of oxygen can occur resulting in serious accident.
- **Install the unit in a location where unit will remain stable, horizontal and free of any vibration transmission.**
Unsuitable installation location can cause the unit to fall resulting in material damage and personal injury.
- **Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections.**
Touching rotating equipment, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shock.
- **This unit is designed specifically for R32.**
Using any other refrigerant can cause unit failure and personal injury.
- **Do not vent R32 into atmosphere.**
R32 is a fluorinated greenhouse gas with a Global Warming Potential (GWP) = 675.
- **Make sure that no air enters the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.**
If air enters the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit will become too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R32 or R410A.**
Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause refrigerant circuit burst resulting in unit failure and personal injury.
- **Be sure to connect both liquid and gas connecting pipes properly before operating the compressor.**
Do not open the liquid and gas service valves before completing piping work, and evacuation.
If the compressor is operated when connecting pipes are not connected and service valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the flare nuts to specified torque using the torque wrench.**
Tightening flare nuts with excess torque can cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **During pump down work, be sure to stop the compressor before closing service valves and removing connecting pipes.**
If the connecting pipes are removed when the compressor is in operation and service valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **In the event of refrigerant leakage during installation, be sure to ventilate the working area properly.**
If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gases will be produced.
- **Electrical work must be carried out by the qualified electrician, strictly in accordance with national or regional electricity regulations.**
Incorrect installation can cause electric shock, fire or personal injury.
- **Make sure that earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker of appropriate capacities are installed.**
Circuit breaker should be able to disconnect all poles under over current. Absence of appropriate breakers can cause electric shock, personal injury or property damage.
- **Be sure to switch off the power source in the event of installation, maintenance or service.**
If the power source is not switched off, there is a risk of electric shock, unit failure or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables properly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.**
Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Do not process, splice or modify the power cable, or share the socket with other power plugs.**
Improper power cable or power plug can cause fire or electric shock due to poor connection, insufficient insulation or over-current.
- **Do not perform any change in protective device or its setup condition yourself.**
Changing protective device specifications can cause electric shock, fire or burst.
- **Be sure to clamp the cables properly so that they do not touch any internal component of the unit.**
If cables touch any internal component, it can cause overheating and fire.
- **Be sure to install service cover properly.**
Improper installation can cause electric shock or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed power and connecting cables for electrical work.**
Using improper cables can cause electric leak or fire.
- **This appliance must be connected to main power source by means of a circuit breaker or switch with a contact separation of at least 3mm.**
Improper electrical work can cause unit failure or personal injury.
- **Be sure to connect the power source cable with power source properly.**
Improper connection can cause intrusion of dust or water resulting in electric shock or fire.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication near automatic control equipment such as an automatic door or fire-alarm device.**
It may cause an accident due to malfunction of equipment.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication in a hospital, etc. where the use of wireless devices is prohibited.**
It may cause malfunction of medical equipment due to a wireless device.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication near a person with a cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.**
It may cause malfunction of a medical device.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
If the unit weight is more than 20 kg, it must be carried by two or more persons. Do not carry the unit by the plastic straps. Always use the carry handle.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
Insects and small animals can enter the electrical parts and cause damage resulting in fire or personal injury. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **If the outdoor unit is installed at height, make sure that there is enough space for installation, maintenance and service.**
Insufficient space can result in personal injury due to falling from the height.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where neighbours are bothered by noise or air generating from the unit.**
It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim.
- **Do not install in the locations where unit is directly exposed to corrosive gases (like sulphide gas, chloride gas), sea breeze or salty atmosphere.**
It can cause corrosion of heat exchanger and damage to plastic parts.
- **Do not install the unit close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves.**
Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipment and telecommunication equipment can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication near another wireless device, microwave, cordless phone, fax machine, etc.**
It may cause malfunction of wireless device.
- **Do not install the unit in the locations where:**
 - There are heat sources nearby.
 - Unit is directly exposed to rain or sunlight.
 - There is any obstacle which can prevent smooth air circulation from inlet and outlet side of the unit.
 - Unit is directly exposed to oil mist and steam such as kitchen.
 - Chemical substances like ammonia (organic fertilizer), calcium chloride (snow melting agent) and acid (sulfurous acid etc.), which can harm the unit, will generate or accumulate.
 - Drain water cannot be discharged properly.
 - TV set or radio receiver is placed within 1m.
 - Height above sea level is more than 1000m.
- **Dispose of all packing materials properly.**
Packing materials contain nails and wood which can cause personal injury. Keep the polybag away from children to avoid the risk of suffocation.
- **Do not put anything on the outdoor unit.**
Object may fall causing property damage or personal injury.
- **Do not touch the aluminum fin of the outdoor unit.**
Aluminium fin temperature is high during heating operation. Touching fin can cause burn.
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipe with your hands when the system is in operation.**
During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending on the operating condition. Touching pipes can cause personal injury like burn (hot/cold).
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power source wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
The isolator should be locked in OFF state in accordance with EN60204-1.

1. ACCESSORIES AND TOOLS

| Standard accessories (Supplied with outdoor unit) | Q'ty | Locally procured parts | Tools for installation work | | |
|---|------|--|-----------------------------|---|---|
| (1) Drain grommet  | 1 | (a) Anchor bolt (M10-M12) × 4 pcs. | Phillips headed driver | Spanner wrench | Vacuum pump* |
| (2) Drain elbow  | 1 | (b) Putty | Knife | Torque wrench [14.0-62.0 N·m (1.4-6.2 kgf·m)] | Gauge manifold * |
| | | (c) Electrical tape | Saw | Wrench key (Hexagon) [4mm] | Charge hose * |
| | | (d) Connecting pipe | Tape measure | Flaring tool set * | Vacuum pump adapter* (Anti-reverse flow type) |
| | | (e) Connecting cable | Pipe cutter | Flare adjustment gauge | Gas leak detector * |
| | | (f) Power cable | | | |
| | | (g) Clamp and screw (for finishing work) | | | |

*Designed specifically for R32 or R410A

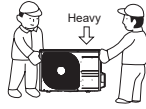
2. OUTDOOR UNIT INSTALLATION

Note as a unit designed for R32

- Do not use any refrigerant other than R32. R32 will rise to pressure about 1.6 times higher than that of a conventional refrigerant. A cylinder containing R32 has a light blue indication mark on the top.
- Do not use a charge cylinder. The use of a charge cylinder will cause the refrigerant composition to change, which results in performance degradation.
- In charging refrigerant, always take it out from a cylinder in the liquid phase.
- All indoor units must be models designed exclusively for R32. Check connectable indoor unit models in a catalog, etc. (A wrong indoor unit, if connected into the system, will impair proper system operation)

1. Haulage

- Always carry or move the unit with two or more persons.
 - The right hand side of the unit as viewed from the front (outlet side) is heavier.
- A person carrying the right hand side must take care of this fact. A person carrying the left hand side must hold the handle provided on the front panel of the unit with his right hand and the corner column section of the unit with his left hand.



CAUTION

When a unit is hauled, take care of its gravity center position which is shifted towards right hand side. If the unit is not hauled properly, it can go off balance and fall resulting in serious injury.

2. Selecting the installation location

Select the suitable installation location where:

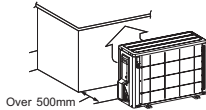
- Unit will be stable, horizontal and free of any vibration transmission.
- There is no obstacle which can prevent smooth air circulation from inlet and outlet side of the unit.
- There is enough space for service and maintenance of unit.
- Neighbours are not bothered by noise or air generating from the unit.
- Outlet air of the unit does not blow directly to animals or plants.
- Drain water can be discharged properly.
- There is no risk of flammable gas leakage.
- There are no other heat sources nearby.
- Unit is not directly exposed to rain or sunlight.
- Unit is not directly exposed to oil mist and steam.
- Chemical substances like ammonia (organic fertilizer), calcium chloride (snow melting agent) and acid (sulfurous acid etc.), which can harm the unit, will not generate or accumulate.
- Unit is not directly exposed to corrosive gases (like sulphide gas, chloride gas), sea breeze or salty atmosphere.
- No TV set or radio receiver is placed within 1m.
- Unit is not affected by electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves generated by other equipments.
- Strong wind does not blow against the unit outlet.
- Heavy snowfalls do not occur (If installed, provide proper protection to avoid snow accumulation).

NOTE

If the unit is installed in the area where there is a possibility of strong wind or snow accumulation, the following measures are required.

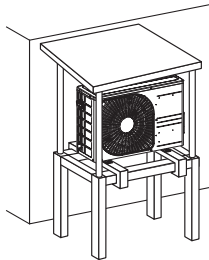
(1) Location of strong wind

- Place the unit with its outlet side facing the wall.
- Place the unit such that the direction of air from the outlet gets perpendicular to the wind direction.



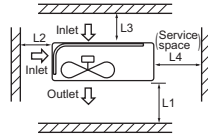
(2) Location of snow accumulation

- Install the unit on the base so that the bottom is higher than snow cover surface.
- Install the unit under eaves or provide the roof on site.



3. Installation space

There must be 1m or larger space between the unit and the wall in at least 1 of the 4 sides. Walls surrounding the unit from 4 sides is not acceptable. The wall height on the outlet side should be 1200mm or less. Refer to the following figure and table for details.



| | Installation space (mm) |
|----|-------------------------|
| L1 | 280 or more |
| L2 | 100 or more |
| L3 | 80 or more |
| L4 | 250 or more |

NOTE

When more than one unit are installed side by side, provide a 250mm or wider interval between them as a service space.

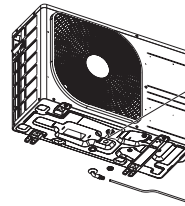
CAUTION

When more than one unit are installed in parallel directions, provide sufficient inlet space so that short-circuiting may not occur.

4. Drain piping work (If necessary)

Carry out drain piping work by using a drain elbow and a drain grommet supplied separately as accessories if condensed water needs to be drained out.

- Install drain elbow and drain grommet.
- Seal around the drain elbow and drain grommet with putty or adequate caulking material.

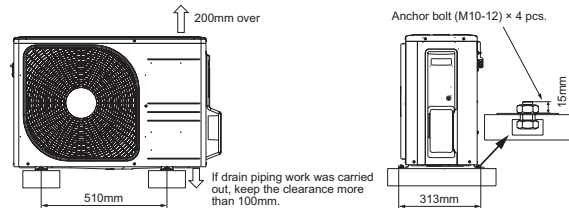


CAUTION

Do not use drain elbow and drain grommet if there is a possibility to have several consecutive days of sub zero temperature. (There is a risk of drain water freezing inside and blocking the drain.)

5. Installation

- Install the unit on a flat level base.
- While installing the unit, keep space and fix the unit's legs with 4 anchor bolts as shown in the figure below. The protrusion of an anchor bolt from the foundation surface must be kept within 15mm.



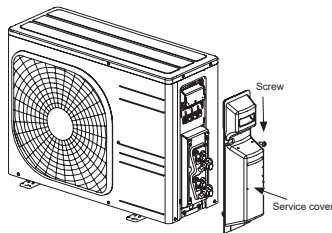
CAUTION

- Install the unit properly so that it does not fall over during earthquake, strong wind, etc.
- Make sure that unit is installed on a flat level base. Installing unit on uneven base may result in unit malfunction.

3. PREPARATION FOR WORK

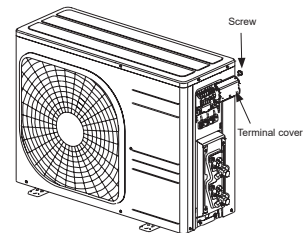
1. Removing service cover

Remove the screw. Slide service cover downwards and remove it.



2. Removing terminal cover

Remove the screw and take out terminal cover.



4. CONNECTING PIPING WORK

1. Restrictions on unit installation

Abide by the following restrictions on unit installation.
Improper installation can cause compressor failure or performance degradation.

| | Model SCM30/40/45 |
|------------------|--|
| pipng length | one indoor unit MAX 25m all indoor unit MAX 30m |
| hight difference | |

2. Preparation of connecting pipe

2.1 Selecting connecting pipe

Select connecting pipe according to the following table.

| Indoor unit | Model 15/20/25/35 |
|-------------|-------------------|
| Gas pipe | φ9.52 |
| Liquid pipe | φ6.35 |

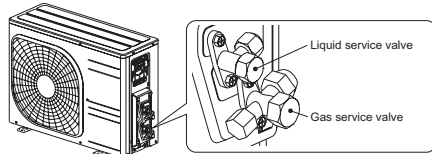
- Pipe wall thickness must be greater than or equal to 0.8mm.
- Pipe material must be O-type (Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe ICS 23.040.15, ICS 77.150.30).

2.2 Cutting connecting pipe

- (1) Cut the connecting pipe to the required length with pipe cutter.
- (2) Hold the pipe downward and remove the burrs. Make sure that no foreign material enters the pipe.
- (3) Cover the connecting pipe ends with the tape.

3. Piping work

Check that both liquid and gas service valves are fully closed.
Carry out the piping work with service valves fully closed.



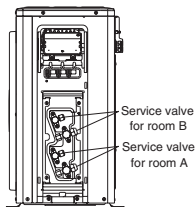
3.1 Flaring pipe

- (1) Take out flare nuts from the service valves of outdoor unit and engage them onto connecting pipes.
- (2) Flare the pipes according to table and figure shown below.
Flare dimensions for R32 are different from those for conventional refrigerant.
Although it is recommended to use the flaring tools designed specifically for R32, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the dimension B with a flare adjustment gauge.

| Copper pipe outer diameter | A | B [Rigid (clutch) type] | |
|----------------------------|------|-------------------------|--------------|
| | | R32 or R410A | Conventional |
| φ6.35 | 9.1 | 0-0.5 | 1.0-1.5 |
| φ9.52 | 13.2 | | |

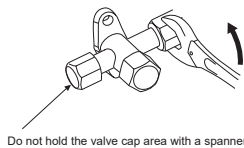
3.2 Connecting pipes

- (1) Connect pipes on both liquid and gas sides.



- (2) Tighten nuts to specified torque shown in the table below.

| Service valve size (mm) | Tightening torque (N·m) |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| φ6.35 (1/4") | 14-18 |
| φ9.52 (3/8") | 34-42 |



CAUTION

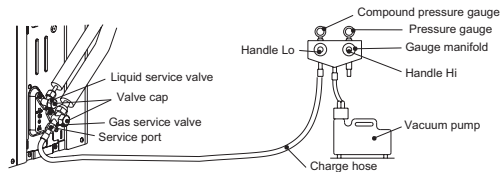
- Do not apply refrigerating machine oil to the flared surface. It can cause refrigerant leakage.
- Do not apply excess torque to the flared nuts. The flared nuts may crack resulting in refrigerant leakage.

4. Evacuation

- (1) Connect vacuum pump to gauge manifold. Connect charge hose of gauge manifold to a service port of outdoor unit.
- (2) Run the vacuum pump for at least one hour after the vacuum gauge shows -0.1 MPa (-76 cm Hg).
- (3) Confirm that the vacuum gauge indicator does not rise even if the system is left for 15 minutes or more. Vacuum gauge indicator will rise if the system has moisture left inside or has a leakage point. Check the system for the leakage point. If leakage point is found, repair it and return to (1) again.
- (4) Close the Handle Lo and stop the vacuum pump.
Keep this state for a few minutes to make sure that the compound pressure gauge pointer does not swing back.
- (5) Remove valve caps from liquid service valve and gas service valve.
- (6) Turn the liquid service valve's rod 90 degree counterclockwise with a hexagonal wrench key to open valve.
Close it after 5 seconds, and check for gas leakage.
Using soapy water, check for gas leakage from indoor unit's flare and outdoor unit's flare and valve rods. Wipe off all the water after completing the check.
- (7) Disconnect charging hose from gas service valve's service port and fully open liquid and gas service valves. (Do not attempt to turn valve rod beyond its stop.)
- (8) Tighten service valve caps and service port cap to the specified torque shown in the table below.

| Service valve size (mm) | Service valve cap tightening torque (N·m) | Service port cap tightening torque (N·m) |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| φ6.35 (1/4") | 20-30 | 10-12 |
| φ9.52 (3/8") | | |

- (9) Repeat the above steps (1) to (8) for all connected indoor units.



CAUTION

To prevent vacuum pump oil from entering into the refrigerant system, use a counterflow prevention adapter.

5. Additional refrigerant charge

SCM30: Additional refrigerant charge is not required.
SCM40/45: Additional refrigerant charge is required only when connecting pipe length exceeds 20m. The following instructions are for SCM40/45ZS-W only.

5.1 Calculating additional refrigerant charge

Additional refrigerant charge can be calculated using the formula given below.
Additional refrigerant charge (g) = { Connecting pipe length (m) - Factory charged length 20 (m) } x 20 (g/m)

NOTE

- If additional refrigerant charge calculation result is negative, there is no need to remove the refrigerant.
- If refrigerant recharge is required for the unit with connecting pipe length 20m or shorter, charge the factory charged amount as shown in the table below.

| | Model SCM40/45 |
|--|----------------|
| The factory refrigerant charge amount (kg) | 1.4 |
| The maximum refrigerant charge amount (kg) | 1.6 |

5.2 Charging refrigerant

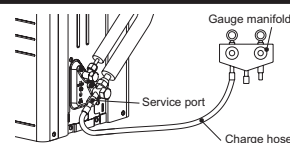
- (1) Charge the R32 refrigerant in liquid phase from service port with both liquid and gas operation valves shut. Since R32 refrigerant must be charged in the liquid phase, make sure that refrigerant is discharged from the cylinder in the liquid phase all the time.
- (2) When it is difficult to charge a required refrigerant amount, fully open both liquid and gas operation valves and charge refrigerant, while running the unit in the cooling mode. When refrigerant is charged with the unit being run, complete the charge operation within 30 minutes.
- (3) Write the additional refrigerant charge calculated from the connecting pipe length on the label attached on the service cover.

CAUTION

- Running the unit with an insufficient quantity of refrigerant for a long time can cause unit malfunction.
- Do not charge more than the maximum refrigerant amount. It can cause unit malfunction.

5. PUMP DOWN

- (1) Connect charge hose of gauge manifold to a service port of outdoor unit.
- (2) Close the liquid service valves for all connected indoor units with hexagonal wrench key.
- (3) Fully open the gas service valves with hexagonal wrench key.
- (4) Carry out forced cooling operation for all connected indoor units (For forced cooling operation procedure, refer to indoor unit installation manual).
- (5) When the low pressure gauge becomes 0.01 MPa, close the gas service valves and stop forced cooling operation.



6. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK

⚠ WARNING

- Make sure that all the electrical work is carried out in accordance with the national or regional electrical standards.
- Make sure that the earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker of appropriate capacities are installed (Refer to the table given below).
- Do not turn on the power until the electrical work is completed.
- Do not use a condensive capacitor for power factor improvement under any circumstances. (It does not improve power factor. Moreover, it can cause an abnormal overheat accident).

Breaker specifications

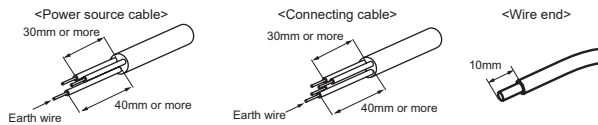
| Model | Phase | Earth leakage breaker | Circuit breaker |
|-------------|--------------|---|--------------------|
| SCM30/40/45 | Single phase | Leakage current: 30 mA, 0.1 sec or less | Over current: 25 A |

Main fuse specification

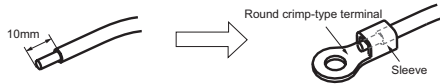
| Model | Specification | Parts No. | Code on LABEL, WIRING |
|-------------|---------------|------------|-----------------------|
| SCM30/40/45 | 250 V 15 A | SSA564A136 | F4 |

1. Preparing cable

- Selecting cable
 - Power source cable
 - 3-cores* 2.5mm² or more, conformed with 60245 IEC57
 - When selecting the power source cable length, make sure that voltage drop is less than 2%. If the wire length gets longer, increase the wire diameter.
 - Connecting cable
 - 4-cores* 1.5mm², conformed with 60245 IEC57
 - * 1 Earth wire is included (Yellow/Green).
- Arrange each wire length as shown below. Make sure that each wire is stripped 10mm from the end.



- Attach round crimp-type terminal to each wire as shown in the below. Select the size of round crimp-type terminal after considering the specifications of terminal block and wire diameter.



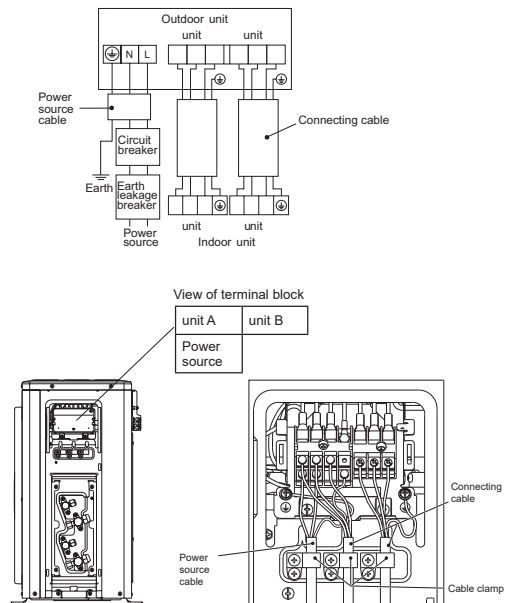
⚠ CAUTION

Power source cable and connecting cable must conform to the specifications mentioned in the manual. Using cables with wrong specifications may result in unit malfunction.

2. Connecting cable

- Remove the service cover and the terminal cover.
- Connect the cables according to the instructions and figures given below.
 - Connect the earth wire of power source cable. An earth wire must be connected before connecting the other wires of power source cable. Keep the earth wire longer than the remaining two wires of power source cable.
 - Connect the remaining two wires (N and L) of power source cable.
 - Connect the wires of connecting cables. Make sure that for each wire, outdoor and indoor side terminal numbers match. Terminal number A of the outdoor unit is used for A indoor unit and terminal number B for B indoor unit respectively. Earth wire shall be Yellow/Green (Y/G) in color and longer than other wires for safety reason.
- Fasten the cables properly with cable clamps so that no external force may work on terminal connections. Moreover, make sure that cables do not touch the piping, etc. When cables are connected, make sure that all electrical components within the electrical component box are free of loose connector coupling or terminal connection.

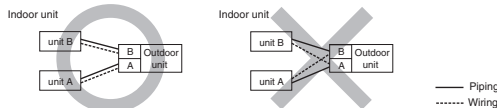
<Circuit diagram>



7. FINISHING WORK

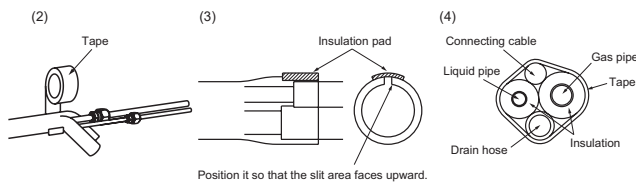
NOTE

- Make sure to match the piping and wiring from each unit to the outdoor unit.
- Be careful because if connections are wrong, normal operation cannot be achieved and may damage the compressor.



1. Heating and condensation prevention

- Dress the connecting pipes (both liquid and gas pipes) with insulation to prevent it from heating and dew condensation. Use the heat insulating material which can withstand 120°C or higher temperature. Make sure that insulation is wrapped tightly around the pipes and no gap is left between them.
- Wrap the refrigerant piping of indoor unit with indoor unit heat insulation using tape.
- Cover the flare-connected joints (indoor side) with the indoor unit heat insulation and wrap it with an insulation pad (standard accessory provided with indoor unit).
- Wrap the connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose with the tape.



NOTE

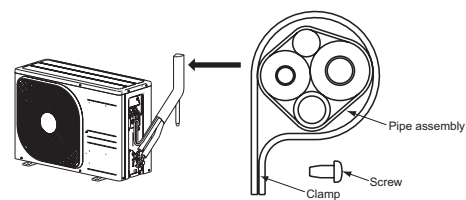
Locations where relative humidity exceeds 70%, both liquid and gas pipes need to be dressed with 20mm or thicker heat insulation materials.

⚠ CAUTION

- Improper insulation can cause condensate (water) formation during cooling operation. Condensate can leak or drip causing damage to household property.
- Poor heat insulating capacity can cause pipe outer surface to reach high temperature during heating operation. It can cause cable deterioration and personal injury.

2. Finishing work

- Make sure that the exterior portion of connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose is wrapped properly with tape. Shape the connecting pipes to match with the contours of the pipe assembly route.
- Fix the pipe assembly with the wall using clamps and screws. Pipe assembly should be anchored every 1.5m or less to isolate the vibration.
- Install the terminal cover and the service cover securely. Water may enter the unit if service cover is not installed properly, resulting in unit malfunction and failure.



⚠ CAUTION

Make sure that the connecting pipes do not touch the components within the unit. If pipes touch the internal components, it may generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

8. INSTALLATION TEST CHECK POINTS

After finishing the installation work, check the following points again before turning on the power. Conduct test run (Refer to indoor unit installation manual) and ensure that the unit operates properly.

| | |
|--|--|
| Power source voltage complies with the rated voltage of air-conditioner. | |
| Earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker are installed. | |
| Power cable and connecting cable are securely fixed to the terminal block. | |
| Both liquid and gas service valves are fully open. | |
| No gas leaks from the joints of the service valves. | |

| | |
|---|--|
| Indoor and outdoor side pipe joints have been insulated. | |
| Drain hose (if installed) is fixed properly. | |
| Screw of the terminal cover and the service cover are tightened properly. | |
| Piping and wiring from each unit to the outdoor unit are matched. | |

(b) Model SCM41ZS-W

RPC012A854

Model SCM41/50/60ZS-W
R32 REFRIGERANT USED

• This installation manual deals with an outdoor unit installation only. For an indoor unit installation, refer to page 59.

NOTE This model requires a minimum of 2 indoor units.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Before installation, read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully and strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
 - The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, **WARNING** and **CAUTION**.
 - WARNING** Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in serious consequences such as death or severe injury.
 - CAUTION** Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in personal injury or property damage.
- Both mention the important items to protect your health and safety. Therefore, strictly follow them by any means.



WARNING

- **Be sure to use only for residential purpose.**
If this unit is installed in inferior environment such as machine shop, vehicle (like ship), warehouse, etc., it can malfunction.
- **Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer completely in accordance with the installation manual.**
Installation by an unqualified person or incorrect installation can cause serious troubles such as water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Be sure to wear protective goggles and gloves while performing installation work.**
Improper safety measures can result in personal injury.
- **Use the original accessories and the specified components for the installation.**
Using parts other than those prescribed may cause water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of flammable gases can occur.**
If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire resulting in property damage and personal injury.
- **When installing the unit in small rooms, make sure that refrigerant density does not exceed the limit (Reference: ISO5149) in the event of leakage.**
If refrigerant density exceeds the limit, consult the dealer and install the ventilation system. Otherwise lack of oxygen can occur resulting in serious accident.
- **Install the unit in a location where unit will remain stable, horizontal and free of any vibration transmission.**
Unsuitable installation location can cause the unit to fall resulting in material damage and personal injury.
- **Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections.**
Touching rotating equipment, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shock.
- **This unit is designed specifically for R32.**
Using any other refrigerant can cause unit failure and personal injury.
- **Do not vent R32 into atmosphere.**
R32 is a fluorinated greenhouse gas with a Global Warming Potential (GWP) = 675.
- **Make sure that no air enters the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.**
If air enters the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit will become too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R32 or R410A.**
Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause refrigerant circuit burst resulting in unit failure and personal injury.
- **Be sure to connect both liquid and gas connecting pipes properly before operating the compressor.**
Do not open the liquid and gas service valves before completing piping work, and evacuation.
If the compressor is operated when connecting pipes are not connected and service valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the flare nuts to specified torque using the torque wrench.**
Tightening flare nuts with excess torque can cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **During pump down work, be sure to stop the compressor before closing service valves and removing connecting pipes.**
If the connecting pipes are removed when the compressor is in operation and service valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **In the event of refrigerant leakage during installation, be sure to ventilate the working area properly.**
If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gases will be produced.
- **Electrical work must be carried out by the qualified electrician, strictly in accordance with national or regional electricity regulations.**
Incorrect installation can cause electric shock, fire or personal injury.
- **Make sure that earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker of appropriate capacities are installed.**
Circuit breaker should be able to disconnect all poles under over current. Absence of appropriate breakers can cause electric shock, personal injury or property damage.
- **Be sure to switch off the power source in the event of installation, maintenance or service.**
If the power source is not switched off, there is a risk of electric shock, unit failure or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables properly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.**
Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Do not process, splice or modify the power cable, or share the socket with other power plugs.**
Improper power cable or power plug can cause fire or electric shock due to poor connection, insufficient insulation or over-current.
- **Do not perform any change in protective device or its setup condition yourself.**
Changing protective device specifications can cause electric shock, fire or burst.
- **Be sure to clamp the cables properly so that they do not touch any internal component of the unit.**
If cables touch any internal component, it can cause overheating and fire.
- **Be sure to install service cover properly.**
Improper installation can cause electric shock or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed power and connecting cables for electrical work.**
Using improper cables can cause electric leak or fire.
- **This appliance must be connected to main power source by means of a circuit breaker or switch with a contact separation of at least 3mm.**
Improper electrical work can cause unit failure or personal injury.
- **Be sure to connect the power source cable with power source properly.**
Improper connection can cause intrusion of dust or water resulting in electric shock or fire.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication near automatic control equipment such as an automatic door or fire-alarm device.**
It may cause an accident due to malfunction of equipment.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication in a hospital, etc. where the use of wireless devices is prohibited.**
It may cause malfunction of medical equipment due to a wireless device.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication near a person with a cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.**
It may cause malfunction of a medical device.

CAUTION

- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
If the unit weight is more than 20 kg, it must be carried by two or more persons. Do not carry the unit by the plastic straps. Always use the carry handle.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
Insects and small animals can enter the electrical parts and cause damage resulting in fire or personal injury. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **If the outdoor unit is installed at height, make sure that there is enough space for installation, maintenance and service.**
Insufficient space can result in personal injury due to falling from the height.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where neighbours are bothered by noise or air generating from the unit.**
It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim.
- **Do not install in the locations where unit is directly exposed to corrosive gases (like sulphide gas, chloride gas), sea breeze or salty atmosphere.**
It can cause corrosion of heat exchanger and damage to plastic parts.
- **Do not install the unit close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves.**
Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipment and telecommunication equipment can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication near another wireless device, microwave, cordless phone, fax machine, etc.**
It may cause malfunction of wireless device.
- **Do not install the unit in the locations where:**
 - There are heat sources nearby.
 - Unit is directly exposed to rain or sunlight.
 - There is any obstacle which can prevent smooth air circulation from inlet and outlet side of the unit.
 - Unit is directly exposed to oil mist and steam such as kitchen.
 - Chemical substances like ammonia (organic fertilizer), calcium chloride (snow melting agent) and acid (sulfurous acid etc.), which can harm the unit, will generate or accumulate.
 - Drain water cannot be discharged properly.
 - TV set or radio receiver is placed within 1m.
 - Height above sea level is more than 1000m.
 It can cause performance degradation, corrosion and damage of components, unit malfunction and fire.
- **Dispose of all packing materials properly.**
Packing materials contain nails and wood which can cause personal injury. Keep the polybag away from children to avoid the risk of suffocation.
- **Do not put anything on the outdoor unit.**
Object may fall causing property damage or personal injury.
- **Do not touch the aluminum fin of the outdoor unit.**
Aluminium fin temperature is high during heating operation. Touching fin can cause burn.
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipe with your hands when the system is in operation.**
During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending on the operating condition. Touching pipes can cause personal injury like burn (hot/cold).
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power source wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
The isolator should be locked in OFF state in accordance with EN60204-1.

1. ACCESSORIES AND TOOLS

| Standard accessories (Supplied with outdoor unit) | | Locally procured parts | | Tools for installation work | | |
|---|---------|--|--|-----------------------------|---|--|
| (1) | Q'ty | (a) | | Phillips headed driver | Spanner wrench | Vacuum pump* |
| (1) Drain grommet  | 1 | (b) Putty | | Knife | Torque wrench [14.0-62.0 N·m(1.4-6.2kgf·m)] | Gauge manifold * |
| (2) Drain elbow  | 1 | (c) Electrical tape | | Saw | Wrench key (Hexagon) [4mm] | Charge hose * |
| (3) Variable diameter joint φ9.52→φ12.7 | SCM41 0 | (d) Connecting pipe | | Tape measure | Flaring tool set * | Vacuum pump adapter* (Anti-reverse flow type) |
| | SCM50 1 | (e) Connecting cable | | Pipe cutter | Flare adjustment gauge | Gas leak detector * |
| | SCM60 2 | (f) Power cable | | | | |
| | | (g) Clamp and screw (for finishing work) | | | | |

*Designed specifically for R32 or R410A

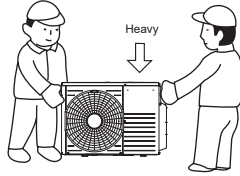
2. OUTDOOR UNIT INSTALLATION

Note as a unit designed for R32

- Do not use any refrigerant other than R32. R32 will rise to pressure about 1.6 times higher than that of a conventional refrigerant. A cylinder containing R32 has a light blue indication mark on the top.
- Do not use a charge cylinder. The use of a charge cylinder will cause the refrigerant composition to change, which results in performance degradation.
- In charging refrigerant, always take it out from a cylinder in the liquid phase.
- All indoor units must be models designed exclusively for R32. Check connectable indoor unit models in a catalog, etc. (A wrong indoor unit, if connected into the system, will impair proper system operation)

1. Haulage

- Always carry or move the unit with two or more persons.
 - The right hand side of the unit as viewed from the front (outlet side) is heavier.
- A person carrying the right hand side must take care of this fact. A person carrying the left hand side must hold the handle provided on the front panel of the unit with his right hand and the corner column section of the unit with his left hand.



CAUTION

When a unit is hauled, take care of its gravity center position which is shifted towards right hand side. If the unit is not hauled properly, it can go off balance and fall resulting in serious injury.

2. Selecting the installation location

Select the suitable installation location where:

- Unit will be stable, horizontal and free of any vibration transmission.
- There is no obstacle which can prevent smooth air circulation from inlet and outlet side of the unit.
- There is enough space for service and maintenance of unit.
- Neighbours are not bothered by noise or air generating from the unit.
- Outlet air of the unit does not blow directly to animals or plants.
- Drain water can be discharged properly.
- There is no risk of flammable gas leakage.
- There are no other heat sources nearby.
- Unit is not directly exposed to rain or sunlight.
- Unit is not directly exposed to oil mist and steam.
- Chemical substances like ammonia (organic fertilizer), calcium chloride (snow melting agent) and acid (sulfurous acid etc.), which can harm the unit, will not generate or accumulate.
- Unit is not directly exposed to corrosive gases (like sulphide gas, chloride gas), sea breeze or salty atmosphere.
- No TV set or radio receiver is placed within 1m.
- Unit is not affected by electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves generated by other equipments.
- Strong wind does not blow against the unit outlet.
- Heavy snowfalls do not occur (If installed, provide proper protection to avoid snow accumulation).

NOTE

If the unit is installed in the area where there is a possibility of strong wind or snow accumulation, the following measures are required.

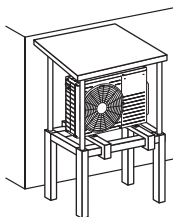
(1) Location of strong wind

- Place the unit with its outlet side facing the wall.
- Place the unit such that the direction of air from the outlet gets perpendicular to the wind direction.



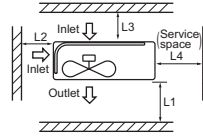
(2) Location of snow accumulation

- Install the unit on the base so that the bottom is higher than snow cover surface.
- Install the unit under eaves or provide the roof on site.



3. Installation space

There must be 1m or larger space between the unit and the wall in at least 1 of the 4 sides. Walls surrounding the unit from 4 sides is not acceptable. The wall height on the outlet side should be 1200mm or less. Refer to the following figure and table for details.



| | Installation space (mm) |
|----|--|
| L1 | 600 or more |
| L2 | 100 or more |
| L3 | 100 or more |
| L4 | No obstacles (Service space or electrical parts) |

NOTE

When more than one unit are installed side by side, provide a 250mm or wider interval between them as a service space.

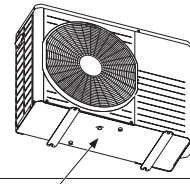
CAUTION

When more than one unit are installed in parallel directions, provide sufficient inlet space so that short-circuiting may not occur.

4. Drain piping work (If necessary)

Carry out drain piping work by using a drain elbow and a drain grommet supplied separately as accessories if condensed water needs to be drained out.

- Install drain elbow and drain grommet.
- Seal around the drain elbow and drain grommet with putty or adequate caulking material.



Do not put a grommet on this hole.

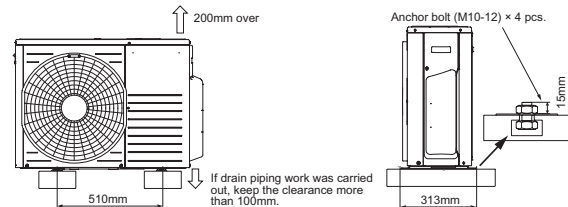
This is a supplementary drain hole to discharge drain water, when a large amount of it is gathered.

CAUTION

Do not use drain elbow and drain grommet if there is a possibility to have several consecutive days of sub zero temperature. (There is a risk of drain water freezing inside and blocking the drain.)

5. Installation

- Install the unit on a flat level base.
- While installing the unit, keep space and fix the unit's legs with 4 anchor bolts as shown in the figure below. The protrusion of an anchor bolt from the foundation surface must be kept within 15mm.



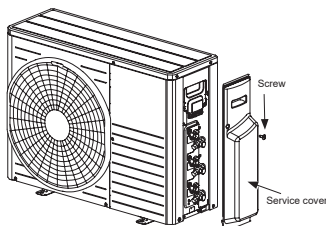
CAUTION

- Install the unit properly so that it does not fall over during earthquake, strong wind, etc.
- Make sure that unit is installed on a flat level base. Installing unit on uneven base may result in unit malfunction.

3. PREPARATION FOR WORK

1. Removing service cover

Remove the screw. Slide service cover downwards and remove it.

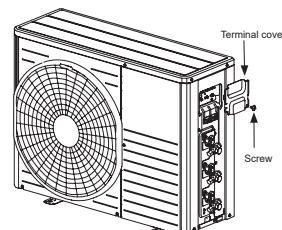


NOTE

Variable diameter joint is inside service cover. Remove it at a safe place before carrying in the installation location to prevent unexpected fall of parts.

2. Removing terminal cover

Remove the screw and take out terminal cover.



4. CONNECTING PIPING WORK

1. Restrictions on unit installation

Abide by the following restrictions on unit installation.
Improper installation can cause compressor failure or performance degradation.

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| Piping length | One indoor unit MAX 25m All indoor unit MAX 40m |
| Height difference | |

2. Preparation of connecting pipe

2.1 Selecting connecting pipe

Select connecting pipe according to the following table.

| | | |
|-------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Indoor unit | Model 15/20/25/35 | Model 40/50/60 |
| Gas pipe | φ9.52 | φ12.7 |
| Liquid pipe | φ6.35 | φ6.35 |

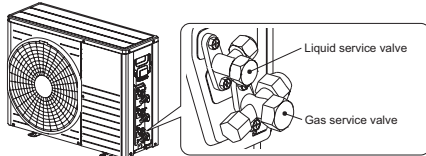
- Pipe wall thickness must be greater than or equal to 0.8mm.
- Pipe material must be O-type (Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe ICS 23.040.15, ICS 77.150.30).

2.2 Cutting connecting pipe

- (1) Cut the connecting pipe to the required length with pipe cutter.
- (2) Hold the pipe downward and remove the burrs. Make sure that no foreign material enters the pipe.
- (3) Cover the connecting pipe ends with the tape.

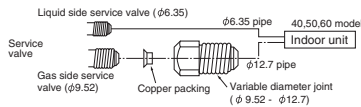
3. Piping work

Check that both liquid and gas service valves are fully closed.
Carry out the piping work with service valves fully closed.



3.1 Flaring pipe

- (1) Take out flare nuts from the service valves of outdoor unit.
If a 4.0, 5.0, 6.0 kW class indoor unit (gas side pipe φ12.7) is going to be connected to the service valves (φ9.52), variable joints available as accessories must be applied to the gas side service valves.
Securely fit the copper packing between the service valve and the variable diameter joint to prevent shifting.
Engage flare nuts onto connecting pipes.

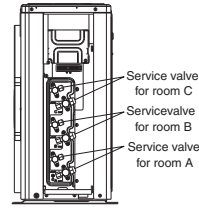


- (2) Flare the pipes according to table and figure shown below.
Flare dimensions for R32 are different from those for conventional refrigerant.
Although it is recommended to use the flaring tools designed specifically for R32, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the dimension B with a flare adjustment gauge.

| | | | | | |
|--|----------------------------|------|--|-------------------------|--------------|
| | Copper pipe outer diameter | A | | B [Rigid (clutch) type] | |
| | φ6.35 | 9.1 | | R32 or R410A | Conventional |
| | φ9.52 | 13.2 | | 0-0.5 | 1.0-1.5 |
| | φ12.7 | 16.6 | | | |

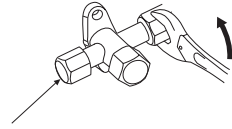
3.2 Connecting pipes

- (1) Connect pipes on both liquid and gas sides.



- (2) Tighten nuts to specified torque shown in the table below.

| | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Service valve size (mm) | Tightening torque (N·m) |
| φ6.35 (1/4") | 14-18 |
| φ9.52 (3/8") | 34-42 |
| φ12.7 (1/2") | 49-61 |



Do not hold the valve cap area with a spanner

CAUTION

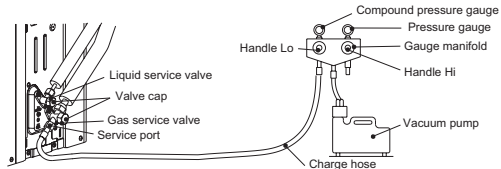
- Do not apply refrigerating machine oil to the flared surface. It can cause refrigerant leakage.
- Do not apply excess torque to the flared nuts. The flared nuts may crack resulting in refrigerant leakage.

4. Evacuation

- (1) Connect vacuum pump to gauge manifold. Connect charge hose of gauge manifold to a service port of outdoor unit.
- (2) Run the vacuum pump for at least one hour after the vacuum gauge shows -0.1 MPa (-76 cm Hg).
- (3) Confirm that the vacuum gauge indicator does not rise even if the system is left for 15 minutes or more. Vacuum gauge indicator will rise if the system has moisture left inside or has a leakage point. Check the system for the leakage point. If leakage point is found, repair it and return to (1) again.
- (4) Close the Handle Lo and stop the vacuum pump. Keep this state for a few minutes to make sure that the compound pressure gauge pointer does not swing back.
- (5) Remove valve caps from liquid service valve and gas service valve.
- (6) Turn the liquid service valve's rod 90 degree counterclockwise with a hexagonal wrench key to open valve. Close it after 5 seconds, and check for gas leakage. Using soapy water, check for gas leakage from indoor unit's flare and outdoor unit's flare and valve rods. Wipe off all the water after completing the check.
- (7) Disconnect charging hose from gas service valve's service port and fully open liquid and gas service valves. (Do not attempt to turn valve rod beyond its stop.)
- (8) Tighten service valve caps and service port cap to the specified torque shown in the table below.

| | | |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| Service valve size (mm) | Service valve cap tightening torque (N·m) | Service port cap tightening torque (N·m) |
| φ6.35 (1/4") | 20-30 | 10-12 |
| φ9.52 (3/8") | | |
| φ12.7 (1/2") | 25-35 | |

- (9) Repeat the above steps (1) to (8) for all connected indoor units.



CAUTION

- To prevent vacuum pump oil from entering into the refrigerant system, use a counterflow prevention adapter.

5. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK

WARNING

- Make sure that all the electrical work is carried out in accordance with the national or regional electrical standards.
- Make sure that the earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker of appropriate capacities are installed (Refer to the table given below).
- Do not turn on the power until the electrical work is completed.
- Do not use a condensive capacitor for power factor improvement under any circumstances. (It does not improve power factor. Moreover, it can cause an abnormal overheat accident).

Breaker specifications

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------|--|--------------------|
| Model | Phase | Earth leakage breaker | Circuit breaker |
| SCM41/50/60 | Single phase | Leakage current: 30 mA, 0.1sec or less | Over current: 25 A |

Main fuse specification

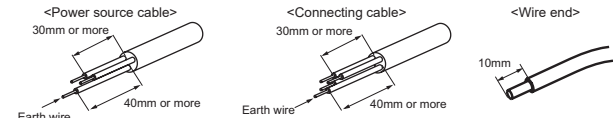
| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| Model | Specification | Parts No. | Code on LABEL, WIRING |
| SCM41/50/60 | 250 V 20 A | SSA564A136A | F4 |

1. Preparing cable

- (1) Selecting cable
Select the power source cable and connecting cable in accordance with the specifications mentioned below.
 - (a) Power source cable
3-cores* 2.5mm² or more, conformed with 60245 IEC57
When selecting the power source cable length, make sure that voltage drop is less than 2%. If the wire length gets longer, increase the wire diameter.
 - (b) Connecting cable
4-cores* 1.5mm², conformed with 60245 IEC57
* 1 Earth wire is included (Yellow/Green).

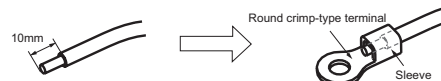
- (2) Arrange each wire length as shown below.

Make sure that each wire is stripped 10mm from the end.



- (3) Attach round crimp-type terminal to each wire as shown in the below.

Select the size of round crimp-type terminal after considering the specifications of terminal block and wire diameter.



CAUTION

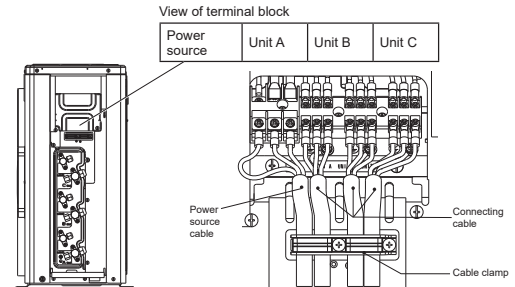
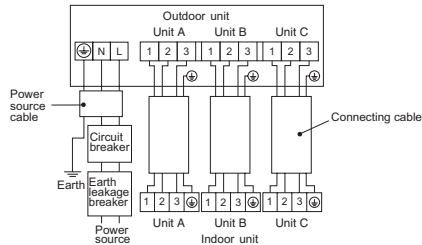
- Power source cable and connecting cable must conform to the specifications mentioned in the manual. Using cables with wrong specifications may result in unit malfunction.

5. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK

2. Connecting cable

- (1) Remove the service cover and the terminal cover.
- (2) Connect the cables according to the instructions and figures given below.
 - (a) Connect the earth wire of power source cable. An earth wire must be connected before connecting the other wires of power source cable. Keep the earth wire longer than the remaining two wires of power source cable.
 - (b) Connect the remaining two wires (N and L) of power source cable.
 - (c) Connect the wires of connecting cables. Make sure that for each wire, outdoor and indoor side terminal numbers match. Terminal number A of the outdoor unit is used for A indoor unit and terminal number B for B indoor unit respectively. Earth wire shall be Yellow/Green (Y/G) in color and longer than other wires for safety reason.
- (3) Fasten the cables properly with cable clamps so that no external force may work on terminal connections. Moreover, make sure that cables do not touch the piping, etc. When cables are connected, make sure that all electrical components within the electrical component box are free of loose connector coupling or terminal connection.

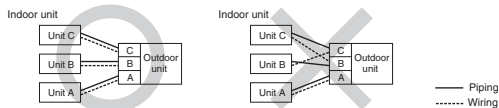
<Circuit diagram>



6. FINISHING WORK

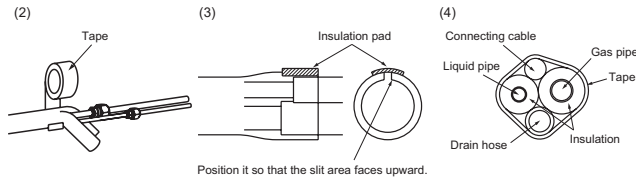
NOTE

- Make sure to match the piping and wiring from each unit to the outdoor unit.
- Be careful because if connections are wrong, normal operation cannot be achieved and may damage the compressor.



1. Heating and condensation prevention

- (1) Dress the connecting pipes (both liquid and gas pipes) with insulation to prevent it from heating and dew condensation. Use the heat insulating material which can withstand 120°C or higher temperature. Make sure that insulation is wrapped tightly around the pipes and no gap is left between them.
- (2) Wrap the refrigerant piping of indoor unit with indoor unit heat insulation using tape.
- (3) Cover the flare-connected joints (indoor side) with the indoor unit heat insulation and wrap it with an insulation pad (standard accessory provided with indoor unit).
- (4) Wrap the connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose with the tape.



Position it so that the slit area faces upward.

NOTE

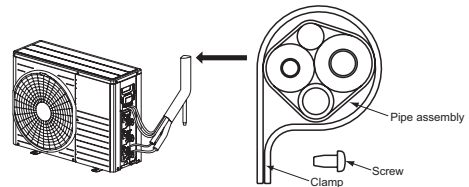
Locations where relative humidity exceeds 70%, both liquid and gas pipes need to be dressed with 20mm or thicker heat insulation materials.

CAUTION

- Improper insulation can cause condensate (water) formation during cooling operation. Condensate can leak or drip causing damage to household property.
- Poor heat insulating capacity can cause pipe outer surface to reach high temperature during heating operation. It can cause cable deterioration and personal injury.

2. Finishing work

- (1) Make sure that the exterior portion of connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose is wrapped properly with tape. Shape the connecting pipes to match with the contours of the pipe assembly route.
- (2) Fix the pipe assembly with the wall using clamps and screws. Pipe assembly should be anchored every 1.5m or less to isolate the vibration.
- (3) Install the terminal cover and the service cover securely. Water may enter the unit if service cover is not installed properly, resulting in unit malfunction and failure.

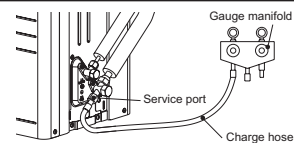


CAUTION

Make sure that the connecting pipes do not touch the components within the unit. If pipes touch the internal components, it may generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

7. PUMP DOWN

- (1) Connect charge hose of gauge manifold to a service port of outdoor unit.
- (2) Close the liquid service valves for all connected indoor units with hexagonal wrench key.
- (3) Fully open the gas service valves with hexagonal wrench key.
- (4) Carry out forced cooling operation for all connected indoor units (For forced cooling operation procedure, refer to indoor unit installation manual).
- (5) When the low pressure gauge becomes 0.01 MPa, close the gas service valves and stop forced cooling operation.



8. INSTALLATION TEST CHECK POINTS

After finishing the installation work, check the following points again before turning on the power. Conduct test run (Refer to indoor unit installation manual) and ensure that the unit operates properly.





| | |
|--|--|
| Power source voltage complies with the rated voltage of air-conditioner. | |
| Earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker are installed. | |
| Power cable and connecting cable are securely fixed to the terminal block. | |
| Both liquid and gas service valves are fully open. | |
| No gas leaks from the joints of the service valves. | |





| | |
|---|--|
| Indoor and outdoor side pipe joints have been insulated. | |
| Drain hose (if installed) is fixed properly. | |
| Screw of the terminal cover and the service cover are tightened properly. | |
| Piping and wiring from each unit to the outdoor unit are matched. | |


(2) Safety precautions in handling air-conditioners with flammable refrigerant

Models SCM30, 41ZS-W


RSA012A090D 

| | | | |
|---|--|---|--|
|  | This equipment uses flammable refrigerants. If the refrigerant is leaked, together with an external ignition source, there is a possibility of ignition. |  | There is information included in the user's manual and/or installation manual. |
|  | The user's manual should be read carefully. |  | A service personnel should be handling this equipment with reference to the installation manual. |

- This safety precaution sheet is for R32 refrigerant. If you want to know the type of refrigerant in the unit, check the label attached to the outdoor unit.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels,  **WARNING** and  **CAUTION**.
 -  **WARNING** : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
 -  **CAUTION** : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.

 **WARNING**

- Strict compliance of the domestic laws must be observed when disposing the appliance.
- Do not use means to accelerate the defrost operation process or to clean, other than those recommended by the manufacturer.
- The appliance shall be stored in a room without continuously operating ignition sources (for example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or an operating electric heater).
- Do not pierce or burn.
- Be aware that refrigerants may not contain an odour.
- The ducts connected to an appliance shall not contain a potential ignition source.

 **CAUTION**

1. General

- That the installation of pipe-work shall be kept to a minimum.
- That pipe-work shall be protected from physical damage.
- That compliance with national gas regulations shall be observed.
- That mechanical connections shall be accessible for maintenance purposes.
- Keep any required ventilation openings clear of obstruction.
- Servicing shall be performed only as recommended by the manufacturer.
- Equipment piping in the occupied space shall be installed in such a way to protect against accidental damage in operation and service.
- Precautions shall be taken to avoid excessive vibration or pulsation to refrigerating piping.
- Protection devices, piping and fittings shall be protected as far as possible against adverse environmental effects, for example, the danger of water collecting and freezing in relief pipes or the accumulation of dirt and debris.
- Provision shall be made for expansion and contraction of long runs of piping.
- Piping in refrigerating systems shall be so designed and installed to minimize the likelihood hydraulic shock damaging the system.
- The indoor equipment and pipes shall be securely mounted and guarded such that accidental rupture of equipment cannot occur from such events as moving furniture or reconstruction activities.
- Instructions for wiring to external zoning dampers and/or mechanical ventilation, to ensure that upon detection of a leak, the zoning dampers are driven fully open and additional mechanical ventilation is activated.
- For appliances using A2L refrigerants, connected via an air duct system to one or more rooms, the supply and return air shall be directly ducted to the space. Open areas such as false ceilings shall not be used as a return air duct.
- The following information requirements apply for enhanced tightness refrigerating systems using A2L refrigerants.
- Where safety shut off valves are specified, the minimum room area may be determined based on the maximum amount of refrigerant that can be leaked as determined in GG.12.2. (IEC 60335-2-40:2018)
- Where safety shut off valves are specified, the location of the valve in the refrigerating system relative to the occupied spaces shall be as described in GG.12.1.(IEC 60335-2-40:2018)

2. Unventilated areas

- The appliance shall be stored in a well-ventilated area where the room size corresponds to the room area as specified for operation.
- If the refrigerant charge amount in the system is ≥ 1.84 kg, an unventilated area where the appliance is installed shall be so constructed that should any refrigerant leak, it will not stagnate so as to create a fire or explosion hazard.

3. Qualification of workers

- The staff in servicing operations must hold the national qualification or other relevant qualifications.

4. Information on servicing

4.1 Checks to the area

- Prior to beginning work on systems containing flammable refrigerants, safety checks are necessary to ensure that the risk of ignition is minimised.
- For repair to the refrigerating system, 4.2 to 4.6 shall be completed prior to conducting work on the system.

4.2 Work procedure

- Work shall be undertaken under a controlled procedure so as to minimise the risk of a flammable gas or vapour being present while the work is being performed.

4.3 General work area

- All maintenance staff and others working in the local area shall be instructed on the nature of work being carried out.
- Work in confined spaces shall be avoided.

4.4 Checking for presence of refrigerant

- The area shall be checked with an appropriate refrigerant detector prior to and during work, to ensure the technician is aware of potentially toxic or flammable atmospheres.
- Ensure that the leak detection equipment being used is suitable for use with all applicable refrigerants, i.e. non-sparking, adequately sealed or intrinsically safe.

4.5 Presence of fire extinguisher

- If any hot work is to be conducted on the refrigerating equipment or any associated parts, appropriate fire extinguishing equipment shall be available to hand. Have a dry powder or CO₂ fire extinguisher adjacent to the charging area.

4.6 No ignition sources

- No person carrying out work in relation to a refrigerating system which involves exposing any pipe work shall use any sources of ignition in such a manner that it may lead to the risk of fire or explosion.
- All possible ignition sources, including cigarette smoking, should be kept sufficiently far away from the site of installation, repairing, removing and disposal, during which refrigerant can possibly be released to the surrounding space.
- Prior to work taking place, the area around the equipment is to be surveyed to make sure that there are no flammable hazards or ignition risks.
- "No Smoking" signs shall be displayed.

4.7 Ventilated area

- Ensure that the area is in the open or that it is adequately ventilated before breaking into the system or conducting any hot work.
- A degree of ventilation shall continue during the period that the work is carried out.
- The ventilation should safely disperse any released refrigerant and preferably expel it externally into the atmosphere.

4.8 Checks to the refrigerating equipment

- Where electrical components are being changed, they shall be fit for the purpose and to the correct specification.
- At all times the manufacturer's maintenance and service guidelines shall be followed.
- If in doubt consult the manufacturer's technical department for assistance.
- The following checks shall be applied to installations using flammable refrigerants:
 - the actual refrigerant charge is in accordance with the room size within which the refrigerant containing parts are installed;
 - the ventilation machinery and outlets are operating adequately and are not obstructed;
 - if an indirect refrigerating circuit is being used, the secondary circuit shall be checked for the presence of refrigerant;
 - marking to the equipment continues to be visible and legible. Markings and signs that are illegible shall be corrected;
 - refrigerating pipe or components are installed in a position where they are unlikely to be exposed to any substance which may corrode refrigerant containing components, unless the components are constructed of materials which are inherently resistant to being corroded or are suitably protected against being so corroded.

⚠ CAUTION

4.9 Checks to electrical devices

- Repair and maintenance to electrical components shall include initial safety checks and component inspection procedures.
- If a fault exists that could compromise safety, then no electrical supply shall be connected to the circuit until it is satisfactorily dealt with.
- If the fault cannot be corrected immediately but it is necessary to continue operation, an adequate temporary solution shall be used.
- This shall be reported to the owner of the equipment so all parties are advised.
- Initial safety checks shall include:
 - that capacitors are discharged: this shall be done in a safe manner to avoid possibility of sparking;
 - that no live electrical components and wiring are exposed while charging, recovering or purging the system;
 - that there is continuity of earth bonding.

5. Repairs to sealed components

- During repairs to sealed components, all electrical supplies shall be disconnected from the equipment being worked upon prior to any removal of sealed covers, etc.
- If it is absolutely necessary to have an electrical supply to equipment during servicing, then a permanently operating form of leak detection shall be located at the most critical point to warn of a potentially hazardous situation.
- Particular attention shall be paid to the following to ensure that by working on electrical components, the casing is not altered in such a way that the level of protection is affected. This shall include damage to cables, excessive number of connections, terminals not made to original specification, damage to seals, incorrect fitting of glands, etc.
- Ensure that the apparatus is mounted securely.
- Ensure that seals or sealing materials have not degraded to the point that they no longer serve the purpose of preventing the ingress of flammable atmospheres.
- Replacement parts shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

6. Repair to intrinsically safe components

- Do not apply any permanent inductive or capacitance loads to the circuit without ensuring that this will not exceed the permissible voltage and current permitted for the equipment in use.
- Intrinsically safe components are the only types that can be worked on while live in the presence of a flammable atmosphere.
- The test apparatus shall be at the correct rating.
- Replace components only with parts specified by the manufacturer.
- Other parts may result in the ignition of refrigerant in the atmosphere from a leak.

NOTE

The use of silicon sealant can inhibit the effectiveness of some types of leak detection equipment. Intrinsically safe components do not have to be isolated prior to working on them.

7. Cabling

- Check that cabling will not be subject to wear, corrosion, excessive pressure, vibration, sharp edges or any other adverse environmental effects. The check shall also take into account the effects of aging or continual vibration from sources such as compressors or fans.

8. Detection of flammable refrigerants

- Under no circumstances shall potential sources of ignition be used in the searching for or detection of refrigerant leaks.
- A halide torch (or any other detector using a naked flame) shall not be used.
- Electronic leak detectors may be used to detect refrigerant leaks but, in the case of flammable refrigerants, the sensitivity may not be adequate, or may need re-calibration. (Detection equipment shall be calibrated in a refrigerant-free area.)
- Ensure that the detector is not a potential source of ignition and is suitable for the refrigerant used.
- Leak detection equipment shall be set at a percentage of the LFL of the refrigerant and shall be calibrated to the refrigerant employed, and the appropriate percentage of gas (25 % maximum) is confirmed.
- Leak detection fluids are suitable for use with most refrigerants but the use of detergents containing chlorine shall be avoided as the chlorine may react with the refrigerant and corrode the copper pipe-work.

NOTE

Examples of leak detection fluids are

- bubble method,
- fluorescent method agents.
- If a leak is suspected, all naked flames shall be removed/extinguished.
- If a leakage of refrigerant is found which requires brazing, all of the refrigerant shall be recovered from the system, or isolated (by means of shut off valves) in a part of the system remote from the leak.
- Removal of refrigerant shall be according to Item 9.

9. Removal and evacuation

- When breaking into the refrigerant circuit to make repairs – or for any other purpose – conventional procedures shall be used. However, for flammable refrigerants it is important that best practice is followed since flammability is a consideration.
- The following procedure shall be adhered to:
 - remove refrigerant;
 - purge the circuit with inert gas (option for A2L);
 - evacuate (option for A2L);
 - purge with inert gas (option for A2L);
 - open the circuit by cutting or brazing.
- The refrigerant charge shall be recovered into the correct recovery cylinders.
- For appliances containing flammable refrigerants other than A2L refrigerants, the system shall be purged with oxygen-free nitrogen to render the appliance safe for flammable refrigerants.
- This process may need to be repeated several times.
- Compressed air or oxygen shall not be used for purging refrigerant systems.
- For appliances containing flammable refrigerants, other than A2L refrigerants, refrigerants purging shall be achieved by breaking the vacuum in the system with oxygen-free nitrogen and continuing to fill until the working pressure is achieved, then venting to atmosphere, and finally pulling down to a vacuum. This process shall be repeated until no refrigerant is within the system.
- When the final oxygen-free nitrogen charge is used, the system shall be vented down to atmospheric pressure to enable work to take place. This operation is absolutely vital if brazing operations on the pipe-work are to take place.
- Ensure that the outlet for the vacuum pump is not close to any ignition sources and that ventilation is available.

10. Charging procedures

- In addition to conventional charging procedures, the following requirements shall be followed.
 - Ensure that contamination of different refrigerants does not occur when using charging equipment. Hoses or lines shall be as short as possible to minimise the amount of refrigerant contained in them.
 - Cylinders shall be kept in an appropriate position according to the instructions.
 - Ensure that the refrigerating system is earthed prior to charging the system with refrigerant.
 - Label the system when charging is complete (if not already).
 - Extreme care shall be taken not to overfill the refrigerating system.
- Prior to recharging the system, it shall be pressure-tested with the appropriate purging gas.
- The system shall be leak-tested on completion of charging but prior to commissioning.
- A follow up leak test shall be carried out prior to leaving the site.

11. Decommissioning

- Before carrying out this procedure, it is essential that the technician is completely familiar with the equipment and all its detail.
- It is recommended good practice that all refrigerants are recovered safely.
- Prior to the task being carried out, an oil and refrigerant sample shall be taken in case analysis is required prior to re-use of recovered refrigerant.
- It is essential that electrical power is available before the task is commenced.
 - a) Become familiar with the equipment and its operation.
 - b) Isolate system electrically.
 - c) Before attempting the procedure ensure that:
 - mechanical handling equipment is available, if required, for handling refrigerant cylinders;
 - all personal protective equipment is available and being used correctly;
 - the recovery process is supervised at all times by a competent person;
 - recovery equipment and cylinders conform to the appropriate standards.
 - d) Pump down refrigerant system, if possible.
 - e) If a vacuum is not possible, make a manifold so that refrigerant can be removed from various parts of the system.
 - f) Make sure that cylinder is situated on the scales before recovery takes place.
 - g) Start the recovery machine and operate in accordance with instructions.
 - h) Do not overfill cylinders. (No more than 80 % volume liquid charge).
 - i) Do not exceed the maximum working pressure of the cylinder, even temporarily.
 - j) When the cylinders have been filled correctly and the process completed, make sure that the cylinders and the equipment are removed from site promptly and all isolation valves on the equipment are closed off.
 - k) Recovered refrigerant shall not be charged into another refrigerating system unless it has been cleaned and checked.

12. Labelling

- Equipment shall be labelled stating that it has been de-commissioned and emptied of refrigerant. The label shall be dated and signed.
- For appliances containing flammable refrigerants, ensure that there are labels on the equipment stating the equipment contains flammable refrigerant.

 **CAUTION**

13. Recovery

- When removing refrigerant from a system, either for servicing or decommissioning, it is recommended good practice that all refrigerants are removed safely.
 - When transferring refrigerant into cylinders, ensure that only appropriate refrigerant recovery cylinders are employed.
 - Ensure that the correct number of cylinders for holding the total system charge is available.
 - All cylinders to be used are designated for the recovered refrigerant and labelled for that refrigerant (i.e. special cylinders for the recovery of refrigerant).
 - Cylinders shall be complete with pressure relief valve and associated shut-off valves in good working order.
 - Empty recovery cylinders are evacuated and, if possible, cooled before recovery occurs.
 - The recovery equipment shall be in good working order with a set of instructions concerning the equipment that is at hand and shall be suitable for the recovery of all appropriate refrigerants including, when applicable, flammable refrigerants.
- In addition, a set of calibrated weighing scales shall be available and in good working order.
 - Hoses shall be complete with leak-free disconnect couplings and in good condition.
 - Before using the recovery machine, check that it is in satisfactory working order, has been properly maintained and that any associated electrical components are sealed to prevent ignition in the event of a refrigerant release. Consult manufacturer if in doubt.
 - The recovered refrigerant shall be returned to the refrigerant supplier in the correct recovery cylinder, and the relevant Waste Transfer Note arranged. Do not mix refrigerants in recovery units and especially not in cylinders.
 - If compressors or compressor oils are to be removed, ensure that they have been evacuated to an acceptable level to make certain that flammable refrigerant does not remain within the lubricant.
 - The evacuation process shall be carried out prior to returning the compressor to the suppliers.
 - Only electric heating to the compressor body shall be employed to accelerate this process.
 - When oil is drained from a system, it shall be carried out safely.

14. Other safety precautions

- A brazed, welded, or mechanical connection shall be made before opening the valves to permit refrigerant to flow between the refrigerating system parts.
- Flammable refrigerant used, refrigerant tubing protected or enclosed to avoid mechanical damage (IEC/EN 60335-2-40).
- Tubing protected to extent that it will not be handled or used for carrying during moving of product (IEC/EN 60335-2-40).
- Flammable refrigerant used, low temperature solder alloys, such as lead/tin alloys, not acceptable for pipe connections (IEC/EN 60335-2-40).
- Do not use flare nut indoor which is locally procured.

Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

- Minimum installation area for indoor unit

⚠ CAUTION

The indoor unit shall be installed in a room with minimum installation area or more according to the refrigerant charge amount (factory refrigerant charge + additional refrigerant charge).

For factory refrigerant charge, refer to the outdoor unit label model name or installation sheet.

For additional refrigerant charge, refer to the outdoor unit installation sheet.

- If the refrigerant charge amount in the system is < 1.84kg, there are no additional minimum floor area requirements.
- If the refrigerant charge amount in the system is ≥ 1.84 kg, you need to comply with additional minimum floor area requirements as described in the following table.
- For further details regarding the installation location of indoor unit, refer to technical manual.

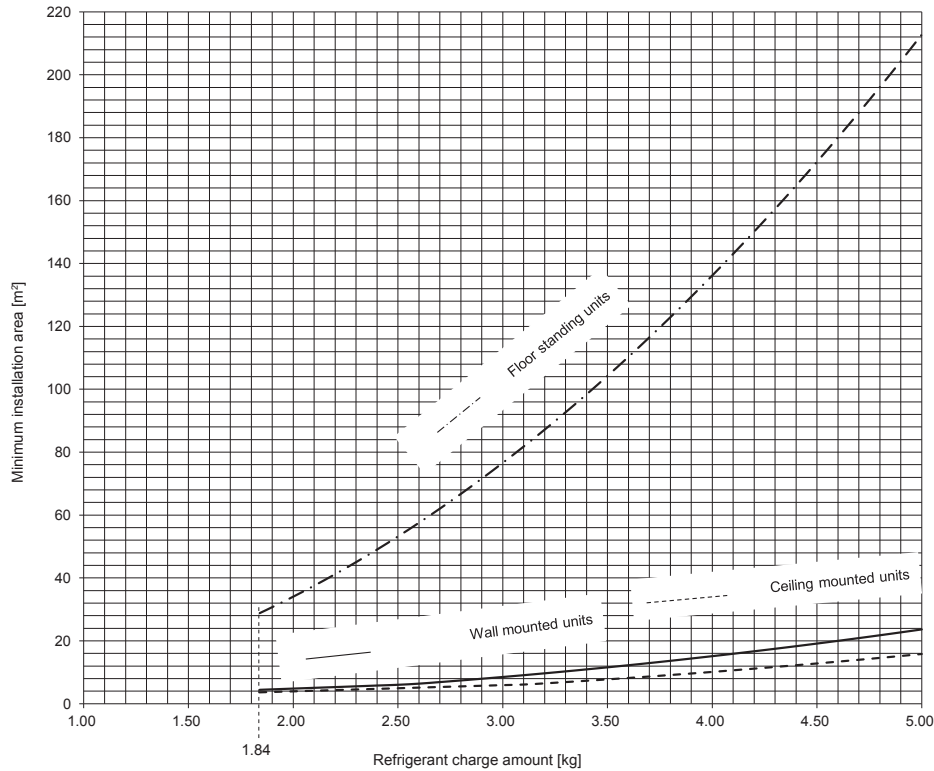


Figure 1. Minimum installation area (A min) graph

Table 1. Minimum installation area (A min) table

| Refrigerant charge amount [kg] | Minimum installation area [m ²] | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|------|------|-------|
| | Wall mounted units H=1.8m | Ceiling mounted units H=2.2m | Floor standing units H=0.6m* | | | |
| 1.00 | No requirements | | | | | |
| 1.10 | | | | | | |
| 1.20 | | | | | | |
| 1.30 | | | | | | |
| 1.40 | | | | | | |
| 1.50 | | | | | | |
| 1.60 | | | | | | |
| 1.70 | | | | | | |
| 1.80 | No requirements | | | | | |
| 1.84 | | | | 4.44 | 3.64 | 28.82 |
| 1.90 | | | | 4.59 | 3.76 | 30.73 |
| 2.00 | | | | 4.83 | 3.95 | 34.05 |
| 2.10 | | | | 5.07 | 4.15 | 37.54 |
| 2.20 | | | | 5.31 | 4.35 | 41.20 |
| 2.30 | | | | 5.55 | 4.55 | 45.03 |
| 2.40 | | | | 5.80 | 4.74 | 49.03 |
| 2.50 | 6.04 | 4.94 | 53.20 | | | |
| 2.60 | 6.40 | 5.14 | 57.54 | | | |
| 2.70 | 6.90 | 5.34 | 62.05 | | | |
| 2.80 | 7.42 | 5.53 | 66.73 | | | |
| 2.90 | 7.96 | 5.73 | 71.58 | | | |
| 3.00 | 8.52 | 5.93 | 76.60 | | | |
| 3.10 | 9.09 | 6.12 | 81.79 | | | |
| 3.20 | 9.69 | 6.49 | 87.16 | | | |
| 3.30 | 10.30 | 6.90 | 92.69 | | | |
| 3.40 | 10.94 | 7.32 | 98.39 | | | |
| 3.50 | 11.59 | 7.76 | 104.26 | | | |
| 3.60 | 12.26 | 8.21 | 110.31 | | | |
| 3.70 | 12.95 | 8.67 | 116.52 | | | |
| 3.80 | 13.66 | 9.15 | 122.90 | | | |
| 3.90 | 14.39 | 9.63 | 129.45 | | | |
| 4.00 | 15.14 | 10.13 | 136.18 | | | |
| 4.10 | 15.90 | 10.65 | 143.07 | | | |
| 4.20 | 16.69 | 11.17 | 150.14 | | | |
| 4.30 | 17.49 | 11.71 | 157.37 | | | |
| 4.40 | 18.31 | 12.26 | 164.77 | | | |
| 4.50 | 19.15 | 12.82 | 172.35 | | | |
| 4.60 | 20.01 | 13.40 | 180.09 | | | |
| 4.70 | 20.89 | 13.99 | 188.01 | | | |
| 4.80 | 21.79 | 14.59 | 196.09 | | | |
| 4.90 | 22.71 | 15.20 | 204.35 | | | |
| 5.00 | 23.65 | 15.83 | 212.78 | | | |

*For floor standing units, the value of installation height (H) is considered 0.6 m to comply to IEC 60335-2-40:2018 Clause GG.2.

2. INDOOR UNITS

2.1 Specifications

(1) Wall mounted type (SRK-ZS series)

Models SRK15ZS-WF, -WFB, -WFT

SRK20, 25, 35ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT

Adapted to RoHS directive

| Item | | Model | SRK15ZS-WF, -WFB, -WFT | |
|---|----------------------------------|---------------------|--|------------------------------|
| Power source | | | 1 Phase, 220–240V, 50Hz / 220V, 60Hz | |
| Operation data | Nominal cooling capacity (range) | kW | 1.5 | |
| | Nominal heating capacity (range) | kW | 2.0 | |
| | Sound power level | Cooling | dB(A) | 48 |
| | | Heating | | 50 |
| | Sound pressure level | Cooling | dB(A) | Hi: 34 Me: 25 Lo: 22 ULo: 19 |
| | | Heating | | Hi: 36 Me: 29 Lo: 23 ULo: 19 |
| Silent mode sound pressure level | | | — | |
| Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth) | | mm | 290 x 870 x 230 | |
| Exterior appearance (4) (Equivalent color) | | | SRK15ZS-WF : Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3/0.1) , RAL : 9003 | |
| Net weight | | kg | 9.5 | |
| Heat exchanger | | | Louver fins & inner grooved tubing | |
| Fan type & Q'ty | | | Tangential fan x 1 | |
| Fan motor (Starting method) | | W | 42 x1 (Direct drive) | |
| Air flow | Cooling | m ³ /min | Hi: 9.3 Me: 7.0 Lo: 5.9 ULo: 5.0 | |
| | Heating | | Hi: 10.0 Me: 8.5 Lo: 6.5 ULo: 5.9 | |
| Available external static pressure | | Pa | 0 | |
| Outside air intake | | | Not possible | |
| Air filter, Quality / Quantity | | | Polypropylene net (washable) x 2 | |
| Shock & vibration absorber | | | Rubber sleeve (for fan motor) | |
| Operation control | Remote control | | Wireless remote control | |
| | Room temperature control | | Microcomputer thermostat | |
| | Operation display | | RUN: Green, TIMER: Yellow | |
| Safety equipments | | | Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection | |
| Installation data | Refrigerant piping size (O.D) | mm | Liquid line: ϕ 6.35 (1/4") Gas line: ϕ 9.52 (3/8") | |
| | Connecting method | | Flare connection | |
| | Attached length of piping | m | Liquid line : 0.54 / Gas line : 0.47 | |
| | Insulation for piping | | Necessary (Both sides), independent | |
| Drain hose | | | Hose connectable (VP16) | |
| Drain pump, max lift height | | mm | — | |
| Interconnecting wires | Size x Core number | | 1.5mm ² x 4 cores (Including earth cable) / Terminal block (Screw fixing type) | |
| IP number | | | IPX0 | |
| Wireless LAN connecting | | | Standard equipment | |
| Standard accessories | | | Mounting kit, Clean filter (Allergen clear filter x 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x 1) | |
| Option parts | | | — | |

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

The pipe length is 5m.

| Operation | Item | Indoor air temperature | | Outdoor air temperature | | Standards |
|-----------|------|------------------------|------|-------------------------|------|-------------|
| | | DB | WB | DB | WB | |
| Cooling | | 27°C | 19°C | 35°C | 24°C | ISO15042-T1 |
| Heating | | 20°C | — | 7°C | 6°C | ISO15042-H1 |

(2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO.

(3) Sound level indicates the value in an anechoic chamber.

During operation these values are somewhat higher due to ambient conditions.

(4) The difference in appearance color is as follows.

| Item | Model | SRK15ZS-WFB | SRK15ZS-WFT |
|---|-------|---|---|
| Exterior appearance (Equivalent color) | | Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3 / 0.1) , RAL : 9003 Black (4.0PB 2.44 / 0.25) , RAL : 9011 | Titanium gray (1.6Y 6.59 / 0.63) , RAL : 7048 Black (4.0PB 2.44 / 0.25) , RAL : 9011 |

Adapted to **RoHS** directive

| Item | | Model | SRK20ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT | |
|---|----------------------------------|------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| Power source | | | 1 Phase, 220–240V, 50Hz / 220V, 60Hz | |
| Operation data | Nominal cooling capacity (range) | kW | 2.0 | |
| | Nominal heating capacity (range) | kW | 3.0 | |
| | Sound power level | Cooling | dB(A) | 48 |
| | | Heating | | 50 |
| | Sound pressure level | Cooling | dB(A) | Hi: 34 Me: 25 Lo: 22 ULo: 19 |
| Heating | | Hi: 36 Me: 29 Lo: 23 ULo: 19 | | |
| Silent mode sound pressure level | | | — | |
| Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth) | | mm | 290 x 870 x 230 | |
| Exterior appearance (4) (Equivalent color) | | | SRK20ZS-W, -WF : Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3/0.1) , RAL : 9003 | |
| Net weight | | kg | 9.5 | |
| Heat exchanger | | | Louver fins & inner grooved tubing | |
| Fan type & Q'ty | | | Tangential fan x 1 | |
| Fan motor (Starting method) | | W | 30 x1 (Direct drive) | |
| Air flow | Cooling | m ³ /min | Hi: 9.3 Me: 7.0 Lo: 5.9 ULo: 5.0 | |
| | Heating | | Hi: 10.0 Me: 8.5 Lo: 6.5 ULo: 5.9 | |
| Available external static pressure | | Pa | 0 | |
| Outside air intake | | | Not possible | |
| Air filter, Quality / Quantity | | | Polypropylene net (washable) x 2 | |
| Shock & vibration absorber | | | Rubber sleeve (for fan motor) | |
| Operation control | Remote control | | Wireless remote control | |
| | Room temperature control | | Microcomputer thermostat | |
| | Operation display | | RUN: Green, TIMER: Yellow | |
| Safety equipments | | | Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection | |
| Installation data | Refrigerant piping size (O.D) | mm | Liquid line: ϕ 6.35 (1/4") Gas line: ϕ 9.52 (3/8") | |
| | Connecting method | | Flare connection | |
| | Attached length of piping | m | Liquid line : 0.54 / Gas line : 0.47 | |
| | Insulation for piping | | Necessary (Both sides), independent | |
| Drain hose | | | Hose connectable (VP16) | |
| Drain pump, max lift height | | mm | — | |
| Interconnecting wires | Size x Core number | | 1.5mm ² x 4 cores (Including earth cable) / Terminal block (Screw fixing type) | |
| IP number | | | IPX0 | |
| Wireless LAN connecting | | | Possible * | |
| Standard accessories | | | Mounting kit, Clean filter (Allergen clear filter x 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x 1) | |
| Option parts | | | Interface kit (SC-BIKN2-E) (Cannot be used with Wireless LAN) | |

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

The pipe length is 5m.

| Operation | Item | Indoor air temperature | | Outdoor air temperature | | Standards |
|-----------|------|------------------------|------|-------------------------|------|-------------|
| | | DB | WB | DB | WB | |
| Cooling | | 27°C | 19°C | 35°C | 24°C | ISO15042-T1 |
| Heating | | 20°C | — | 7°C | 6°C | ISO15042-H1 |

(2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO.

(3) Sound level indicates the value in an anechoic chamber.

During operation these values are somewhat higher due to ambient conditions.

(4) The difference in appearance color is as follows.

| Item | Model | SRK20ZS-WB, -WFB | SRK20ZS-WT, -WFT |
|---|-------|---|--|
| Exterior appearance (Equivalent color) | | Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3 / 0.1) , RAL : 9003 Black (4.0PB 2.44 / 0.25) , RAL : 9011 | Titanium gray (1.6Y 6.59 / 0.63) , RAL :7048 Black (4.0PB 2.44 / 0.25) , RAL : 9011 |

(5) * -W series : Option, -WF series : Standard equipment

Adapted to RoHS directive

| Item | | Model | SRK25ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT | |
|---|----------------------------------|------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| Power source | | | 1 Phase, 220–240V, 50Hz / 220V, 60Hz | |
| Operation data | Nominal cooling capacity (range) | kW | 2.5 | |
| | Nominal heating capacity (range) | kW | 3.4 | |
| | Sound power level | Cooling | dB(A) | 50 |
| | | Heating | | 53 |
| | Sound pressure level | Cooling | dB(A) | Hi: 36 Me: 28 Lo: 23 ULo: 19 |
| Heating | | Hi: 39 Me: 30 Lo: 24 ULo: 19 | | |
| Silent mode sound pressure level | | | — | |
| Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth) | | mm | 290 x 870 x 230 | |
| Exterior appearance (4) (Equivalent color) | | | SRK25ZS-W, -WF : Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3/0.1) , RAL : 9003 | |
| Net weight | | kg | 9.5 | |
| Heat exchanger | | | Louver fins & inner grooved tubing | |
| Fan type & Q'ty | | | Tangential fan x 1 | |
| Fan motor (Starting method) | | W | 30 x1 (Direct drive) | |
| Air flow | Cooling | m ³ /min | Hi: 9.9 Me: 8.0 Lo: 5.9 ULo: 5.0 | |
| | Heating | | Hi: 11.3 Me: 8.7 Lo: 6.7 ULo: 5.9 | |
| Available external static pressure | | Pa | 0 | |
| Outside air intake | | | Not possible | |
| Air filter, Quality / Quantity | | | Polypropylene net (washable) x 2 | |
| Shock & vibration absorber | | | Rubber sleeve (for fan motor) | |
| Operation control | Remote control | | Wireless remote control | |
| | Room temperature control | | Microcomputer thermostat | |
| | Operation display | | RUN: Green, TIMER: Yellow | |
| Safety equipments | | | Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection | |
| Installation data | Refrigerant piping size (O.D) | mm | Liquid line: ϕ 6.35 (1/4") Gas line: ϕ 9.52 (3/8") | |
| | Connecting method | | Flare connection | |
| | Attached length of piping | m | Liquid line : 0.54 / Gas line : 0.47 | |
| | Insulation for piping | | Necessary (Both sides), independent | |
| Drain hose | | | Hose connectable (VP16) | |
| Drain pump, max lift height | | mm | — | |
| Interconnecting wires | Size x Core number | | 1.5mm ² x 4 cores (Including earth cable) / Terminal block (Screw fixing type) | |
| IP number | | | IPX0 | |
| Wireless LAN connecting | | | Possible * | |
| Standard accessories | | | Mounting kit, Clean filter (Allergen clear filter x 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x 1) | |
| Option parts | | | Interface kit (SC-BIKN2-E) (Cannot be used with Wireless LAN) | |

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

The pipe length is 5m.

| Operation | Item | Indoor air temperature | | Outdoor air temperature | | Standards |
|-----------|------|------------------------|------|-------------------------|------|-------------|
| | | DB | WB | DB | WB | |
| Cooling | | 27°C | 19°C | 35°C | 24°C | ISO15042-T1 |
| Heating | | 20°C | — | 7°C | 6°C | ISO15042-H1 |

(2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO.

(3) Sound level indicates the value in an anechoic chamber.

During operation these values are somewhat higher due to ambient conditions.

(4) The difference in appearance color is as follows.

| Item | Model | SRK25ZS-WB, -WFB | SRK25ZS-WT, -WFT |
|---|-------|---|---|
| Exterior appearance (Equivalent color) | | Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3 / 0.1) , RAL : 9003 Black (4.0PB 2.44 / 0.25) , RAL : 9011 | Titanium gray (1.6Y 6.59 / 0.63) , RAL : 7048 Black (4.0PB 2.44 / 0.25) , RAL : 9011 |

(5) * -W series : Option, -WF series : Standard equipment

Adapted to RoHS directive

| Item | | Model | SRK35ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|---|--|---|------|-------------|
| Power source | | | 1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz / 220V, 60Hz | | | |
| Operation data | Nominal cooling capacity (range) | kW | 3.5 | | | |
| | Nominal heating capacity (range) | kW | 4.5 | | | |
| | Sound power level | Cooling | dB(A) | 54 | | |
| | | Heating | | 56 | | |
| | Sound pressure level | Cooling | dB(A) | Hi: 40 Me: 30 Lo: 26 ULo: 19 | | |
| Heating | | Hi: 41 Me: 36 Lo: 25 ULo: 19 | | | | |
| Silent mode sound pressure level | | | - | | | |
| Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth) | | mm | 290 x 870 x 230 | | | |
| Exterior appearance (4) (Equivalent color) | | | SRK35ZS-W, -WF : Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3/0.1) , RAL : 9003 | | | |
| Net weight | | kg | 9.5 | | | |
| Heat exchanger | | | Louver fins & inner grooved tubing | | | |
| Fan type & Q'ty | | | Tangential fan x 1 | | | |
| Fan motor (Starting method) | | W | 30 x1 (Direct drive) | | | |
| Air flow | Cooling | m ³ /min | Hi: 11.3 Me: 8.7 Lo: 7.0 ULo: 5.0 | | | |
| | Heating | | Hi: 12.3 Me: 11.0 Lo: 7.0 ULo: 5.6 | | | |
| Available external static pressure | | Pa | 0 | | | |
| Outside air intake | | | Not possible | | | |
| Air filter, Quality / Quantity | | | Polypropylene net (washable) x 2 | | | |
| Shock & vibration absorber | | | Rubber sleeve (for fan motor) | | | |
| Operation control | Remote control | | Wireless remote control | | | |
| | Room temperature control | | Microcomputer thermostat | | | |
| | Operation display | | RUN: Green, TIMER: Yellow | | | |
| Safety equipments | | | Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection | | | |
| Installation data | Refrigerant piping size (O.D) | mm | Liquid line: ϕ 6.35 (1/4") Gas line: ϕ 9.52 (3/8") | | | |
| | Connecting method | | Flare connection | | | |
| | Attached length of piping | m | Liquid line : 0.54 / Gas line : 0.47 | | | |
| | Insulation for piping | | Necessary (Both sides), independent | | | |
| Drain hose | | | Hose connectable (VP16) | | | |
| Drain pump, max lift height | | mm | - | | | |
| Interconnecting wires | Size x Core number | | 1.5mm ² x 4 cores (Including earth cable) / Terminal block (Screw fixing type) | | | |
| IP number | | | IPX0 | | | |
| Wireless LAN connecting | | | Possible * | | | |
| Standard accessories | | | Mounting kit, Clean filter (Allergen clear filter x 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x 1) | | | |
| Option parts | | | Interface kit (SC-BIKN2-E) (Cannot be used with Wireless LAN) | | | |
| Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions. The pipe length is 5m. | | | | | | |
| Item | | Indoor air temperature | | Outdoor air temperature | | Standards |
| Operation | | DB | WB | DB | WB | |
| Cooling | | 27°C | 19°C | 35°C | 24°C | ISO15042-T1 |
| Heating | | 20°C | - | 7°C | 6°C | ISO15042-H1 |
| (2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO. | | | | | | |
| (3) Sound level indicates the value in an anechoic chamber. During operation these values are somewhat higher due to ambient conditions. | | | | | | |
| (4) The difference in appearance color is as follows. | | | | | | |
| Item | | SRK35ZS-WB, -WFB | | SRK35ZS-WT, -WFT | | |
| Exterior appearance (Equivalent color) | | Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3 / 0.1) , RAL : 9003 Black (4.0PB 2.44 / 0.25) , RAL : 9011 | | Titanium gray (1.6Y 6.59 / 0.63) , RAL : 7048 Black (4.0PB 2.44 / 0.25) , RAL : 9011 | | |
| (5) * -W series : Option, -WF series : Standard equipment | | | | | | |

(2) Wall mounted type (SKM-ZSP series)**Models SKM15, 20, 25, 35ZSP-W**

| Item | | Model | SKM15ZSP-W | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------------|---|-------------------------|-------------|-----------|
| Power source | | | 1 Phase, 220–240V, 50Hz / 220V, 60Hz | | | |
| Operation data | Nominal cooling capacity | kW | 1.5 | | | |
| | Nominal heating capacity | kW | 2.0 | | | |
| | Sound power level | Cooling | dB(A) | 57 | | |
| | | Heating | | 56 | | |
| | Sound pressure level | Cooling | dB(A) | Hi: 42 Me: 35 Lo: 22 | | |
| Heating | | Hi: 41 Me: 36 Lo: 26 | | | | |
| Silent mode sound pressure level | | | — | | | |
| Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth) | | mm | 267 x 783 x 210 | | | |
| Exterior appearance (Equivalent color) | | | Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3/0.1) , RAL : 9003 | | | |
| Net weight | | kg | 7.5 | | | |
| Heat exchanger | | | Louver fins & inner grooved tubing | | | |
| Fan type & Q'ty | | | Tangential fan x 1 | | | |
| Fan motor (Starting method) | | W | 30 x1 (Direct drive) | | | |
| Air flow | Cooling | m ³ /min | Hi: 8.5 Me: 7.0 Lo: 5.0 | | | |
| | Heating | | Hi: 8.0 Me: 7.0 Lo: 5.5 | | | |
| Available external static pressure | | Pa | 0 | | | |
| Outside air intake | | | Not possible | | | |
| Air filter, Quality / Quantity | | | Polypropylene net (washable) | | | |
| Shock & vibration absorber | | | Rubber sleeve (for fan motor) | | | |
| Operation control | Remote control | | Wireless remote control | | | |
| | Room temperature control | | Microcomputer thermostat | | | |
| | Operation display | | RUN: Green , TIMER: Yellow | | | |
| Safety equipments | | | Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection | | | |
| Installation data | Refrigerant piping size (O.D) | mm | Liquid line: ϕ 6.35 (1/4") Gas line: ϕ 9.52 (3/8") | | | |
| | Connecting method | | Flare connection | | | |
| | Attached length of piping | m | Liquid line : 0.46 / Gas line : 0.39 | | | |
| | Insulation for piping | | Necessary (Both sides), independent | | | |
| Drain hose | | | Hose connectable (VP16) | | | |
| Drain pump, max lift height | | mm | — | | | |
| Interconnecting wires | Size x Core number | | 1.5mm ² x 4 cores (Including earth cable) / Terminal block (Screw fixing type) | | | |
| IP number | | | IPX0 | | | |
| Standard accessories | | | Mounting kit | | | |
| Option parts | | | — | | | |
| Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions. | | | The pipe length is 5m. | | | |
| Operation | Item | Indoor air temperature | | Outdoor air temperature | | Standards |
| | | DB | WB | DB | WB | |
| | Cooling | 27°C | 19°C | 35°C | 24°C | |
| Heating | 20°C | — | 7°C | 6°C | ISO15042-H1 | |
| (2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO. | | | | | | |
| (3) Sound level indicates the value in an anechoic chamber. | | | | | | |
| During operation these values are somewhat higher due to ambient conditions. | | | | | | |

| Item | | Model | SKM20ZSP-W | |
|--|---------------------------------|----------------------|---|----------------------|
| Power source | | | 1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz / 220V, 60Hz | |
| Operation data | Nominal cooling capacity | kW | 2.0 | |
| | Nominal heating capacity | kW | 3.0 | |
| | Sound power level | Cooling | dB(A) | 57 |
| | | Heating | | 56 |
| | Sound pressure level | Cooling | dB(A) | Hi: 42 Me: 35 Lo: 22 |
| Heating | | Hi: 41 Me: 36 Lo: 26 | | |
| Silent mode sound pressure level | | | — | |
| Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth) | | mm | 267 x 783 x 210 | |
| Exterior appearance (Equivalent color) | | | Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3/0.1) , RAL : 9003 | |
| Net weight | | kg | 7.5 | |
| Heat exchanger | | | Louver fins & inner grooved tubing | |
| Fan type & Q'ty | | | Tangential fan x 1 | |
| Fan motor (Starting method) | | W | 30 x1 (Direct drive) | |
| Air flow | Cooling | m ³ /min | Hi: 8.5 Me: 7.0 Lo: 5.0 | |
| | Heating | | Hi: 8.0 Me: 7.0 Lo: 5.5 | |
| Available external static pressure | | Pa | 0 | |
| Outside air intake | | | Not possible | |
| Air filter, Quality / Quantity | | | Polypropylene net (washable) | |
| Shock & vibration absorber | | | Rubber sleeve (for fan motor) | |
| Operation control | Remote control | | Wireless remote control | |
| | Room temperature control | | Microcomputer thermostat | |
| | Operation display | | RUN: Green , TIMER: Yellow | |
| Safety equipments | | | Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection | |
| Installation data | Refrigerant piping size (O.D) | mm | Liquid line: ϕ 6.35 (1/4") Gas line: ϕ 9.52 (3/8") | |
| | Connecting method | | Flare connection | |
| | Attached length of piping | m | Liquid line : 0.46 / Gas line : 0.39 | |
| | Insulation for piping | | Necessary (Both sides), independent | |
| Drain hose | | | Hose connectable (VP16) | |
| Drain pump, max lift height | | mm | — | |
| Interconnecting wires | Size x Core number | | 1.5mm ² x 4 cores (Including earth cable) / Terminal block (Screw fixing type) | |
| IP number | | | IPX0 | |
| Standard accessories | | | Mounting kit | |
| Option parts | | | — | |

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions. The pipe length is 5m.

| Operation \ Item | Indoor air temperature | | Outdoor air temperature | | Standards |
|------------------|------------------------|------|-------------------------|------|-------------|
| | DB | WB | DB | WB | |
| Cooling | 27°C | 19°C | 35°C | 24°C | ISO15042-T1 |
| Heating | 20°C | — | 7°C | 6°C | ISO15042-H1 |

(2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO.

(3) Sound level indicates the value in an anechoic chamber.

During operation these values are somewhat higher due to ambient conditions.

| Item | | Model | SKM25ZSP-W | |
|--|----------------------------------|----------------------|---|----------------------|
| Power source | | | 1 Phase, 220–240V, 50Hz / 220V, 60Hz | |
| Operation data | Nominal cooling capacity (range) | kW | 2.5 | |
| | Nominal heating capacity (range) | kW | 3.4 | |
| | Sound power level | Cooling | dB(A) | 57 |
| | | Heating | | 56 |
| | Sound pressure level | Cooling | dB(A) | Hi: 43 Me: 36 Lo: 23 |
| Heating | | Hi: 41 Me: 36 Lo: 27 | | |
| Silent mode sound pressure level | | | — | |
| Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth) | | mm | 267 x 783 x 210 | |
| Exterior appearance (Equivalent color) | | | Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3/0.1) , RAL : 9003 | |
| Net weight | | kg | 7.5 | |
| Heat exchanger | | | Louver fins & inner grooved tubing | |
| Fan type & Q'ty | | | Tangential fan x 1 | |
| Fan motor (Starting method) | | W | 30 x1 (Direct drive) | |
| Air flow | Cooling | m ³ /min | Hi: 8.5 Me: 7.0 Lo: 5.0 | |
| | Heating | | Hi: 8.0 Me: 7.0 Lo: 5.5 | |
| Available external static pressure | | Pa | 0 | |
| Outside air intake | | | Not possible | |
| Air filter, Quality / Quantity | | | Polypropylene net (washable) | |
| Shock & vibration absorber | | | Rubber sleeve (for fan motor) | |
| Operation control | Remote control | | Wireless remote control | |
| | Room temperature control | | Microcomputer thermostat | |
| | Operation display | | RUN: Green , TIMER: Yellow | |
| Safety equipments | | | Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection | |
| Installation data | Refrigerant piping size (O.D) | mm | Liquid line: ϕ 6.35 (1/4") Gas line: ϕ 9.52 (3/8") | |
| | Connecting method | | Flare connection | |
| | Attached length of piping | m | Liquid line : 0.46 / Gas line : 0.39 | |
| | Insulation for piping | | Necessary (Both sides), independent | |
| Drain hose | | | Hose connectable (VP16) | |
| Drain pump, max lift height | | mm | — | |
| Interconnecting wires | Size x Core number | | 1.5mm ² x 4 cores (Including earth cable) / Terminal block (Screw fixing type) | |
| IP number | | | IPX0 | |
| Standard accessories | | | Mounting kit | |
| Option parts | | | — | |

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

The pipe length is 5m.

| Operation | Item | Indoor air temperature | | Outdoor air temperature | | Standards |
|-----------|------|------------------------|------|-------------------------|------|-------------|
| | | DB | WB | DB | WB | |
| Cooling | | 27°C | 19°C | 35°C | 24°C | ISO15042-T1 |
| Heating | | 20°C | — | 7°C | 6°C | ISO15042-H1 |

(2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO.

(3) Sound level indicates the value in an anechoic chamber.

During operation these values are somewhat higher due to ambient conditions.

| Item | | Model | SKM35ZSP-W | |
|--|----------------------------------|----------------------|---|----------------------|
| Power source | | | 1 Phase, 220–240V, 50Hz / 220V, 60Hz | |
| Operation data | Nominal cooling capacity (range) | kW | 3.5 | |
| | Nominal heating capacity (range) | kW | 4.5 | |
| | Sound power level | Cooling | dB(A) | 58 |
| | | Heating | | 58 |
| | Sound pressure level | Cooling | dB(A) | Hi: 44 Me: 37 Lo: 25 |
| Heating | | Hi: 42 Me: 37 Lo: 30 | | |
| Silent mode sound pressure level | | | — | |
| Exterior dimensions (Height x Width x Depth) | | mm | 267 x 783 x 210 | |
| Exterior appearance (Equivalent color) | | | Fine snow (8.0Y 9.3/0.1) , RAL : 9003 | |
| Net weight | | kg | 7.5 | |
| Heat exchanger | | | Louver fins & inner grooved tubing | |
| Fan type & Q'ty | | | Tangential fan x 1 | |
| Fan motor (Starting method) | | W | 30 x1 (Direct drive) | |
| Air flow | Cooling | m ³ /min | Hi: 9.0 Me: 7.5 Lo: 5.0 | |
| | Heating | | Hi: 8.5 Me: 7.0 Lo: 6.0 | |
| Available external static pressure | | Pa | 0 | |
| Outside air intake | | | Not possible | |
| Air filter, Quality / Quantity | | | Polypropylene net (washable) | |
| Shock & vibration absorber | | | Rubber sleeve (for fan motor) | |
| Operation control | Remote control | | Wireless remote control | |
| | Room temperature control | | Microcomputer thermostat | |
| | Operation display | | RUN: Green , TIMER: Yellow | |
| Safety equipments | | | Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection | |
| Installation data | Refrigerant piping size (O.D) | mm | Liquid line: ϕ 6.35 (1/4") Gas line: ϕ 9.52 (3/8") | |
| | Connecting method | | Flare connection | |
| | Attached length of piping | m | Liquid line : 0.46 / Gas line : 0.39 | |
| | Insulation for piping | | Necessary (Both sides), independent | |
| Drain hose | | | Hose connectable (VP16) | |
| Drain pump, max lift height | | mm | — | |
| Interconnecting wires | Size x Core number | | 1.5mm ² x 4 cores (Including earth cable) / Terminal block (Screw fixing type) | |
| IP number | | | IPX0 | |
| Standard accessories | | | Mounting kit | |
| Option parts | | | — | |

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

The pipe length is 5m.

| Operation | Item | Indoor air temperature | | Outdoor air temperature | | Standards |
|-----------|------|------------------------|------|-------------------------|------|-------------|
| | | DB | WB | DB | WB | |
| Cooling | | 27°C | 19°C | 35°C | 24°C | ISO15042-T1 |
| Heating | | 20°C | — | 7°C | 6°C | ISO15042-H1 |

(2) This air-conditioner is manufactured and tested in conformity with the ISO.

(3) Sound level indicates the value in an anechoic chamber.

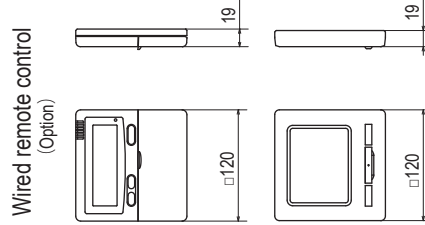
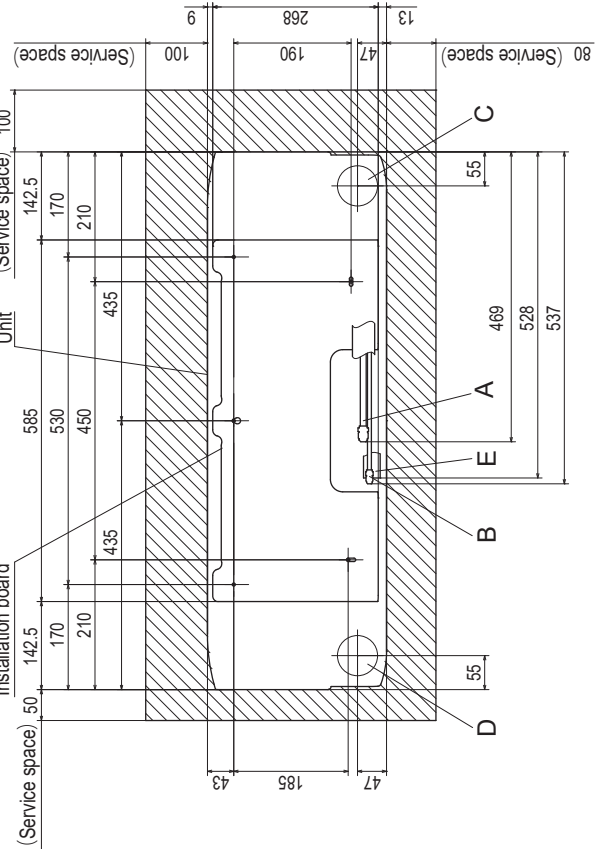
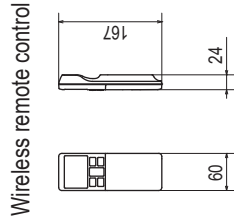
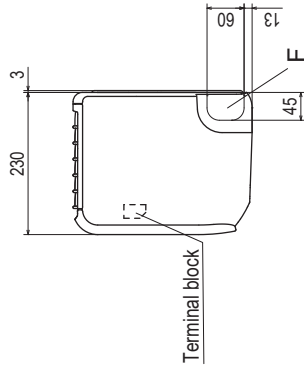
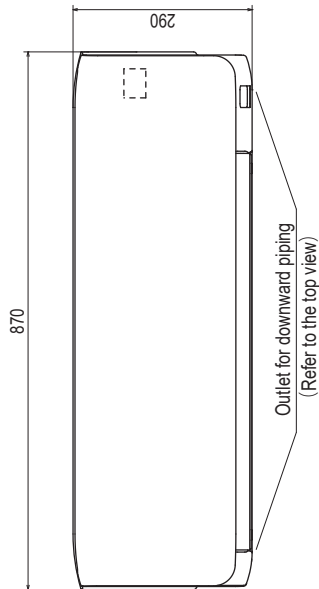
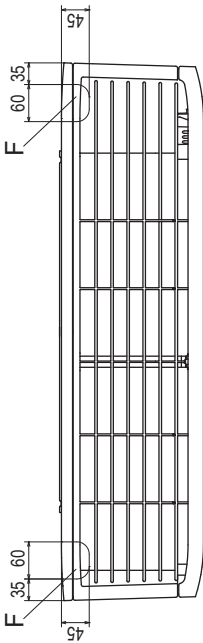
During operation these values are somewhat higher due to ambient conditions.

2.2 Exterior dimensions

(1) Wall mounted type (SRK-ZS series)

Models SRK15ZS-WF, -WFB, -WFT
SRK20, 25, 35ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT

| Symbol | Content |
|--------|--|
| A | Gas piping φ 9.52 (3/8") (Flare) |
| B | Liquid piping φ 6.35 (1/4") (Flare) |
| C | Hole on wall for right rear piping (φ 65) |
| D | Hole on wall for left rear piping (φ 65) |
| E | Drain hose VP16 |
| F | Outlet for piping (on both side) |

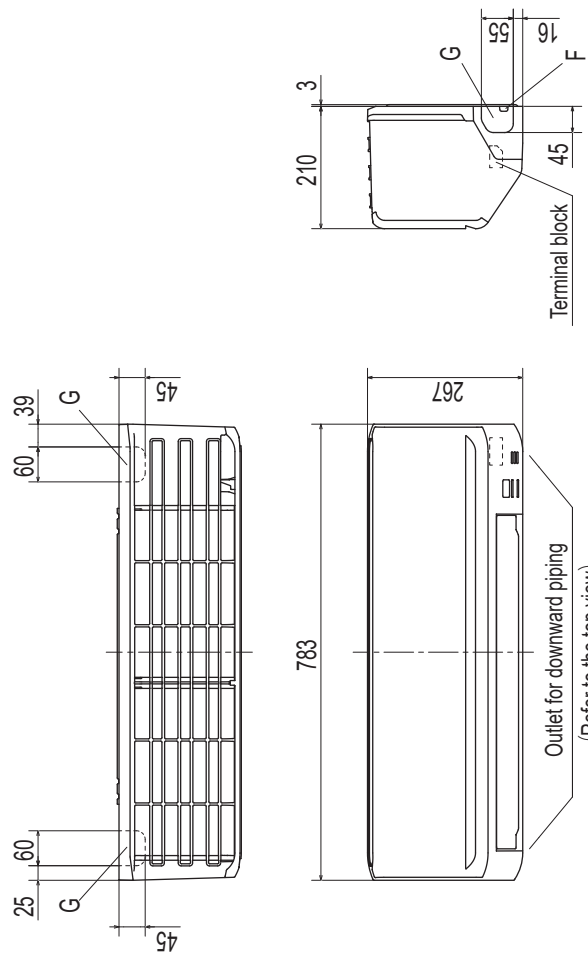


- Notes (1) The model name label is attached on the right side of the unit.
(2) To connect the wired remote control, the interface kit (SC-B1KN2-E) is required.

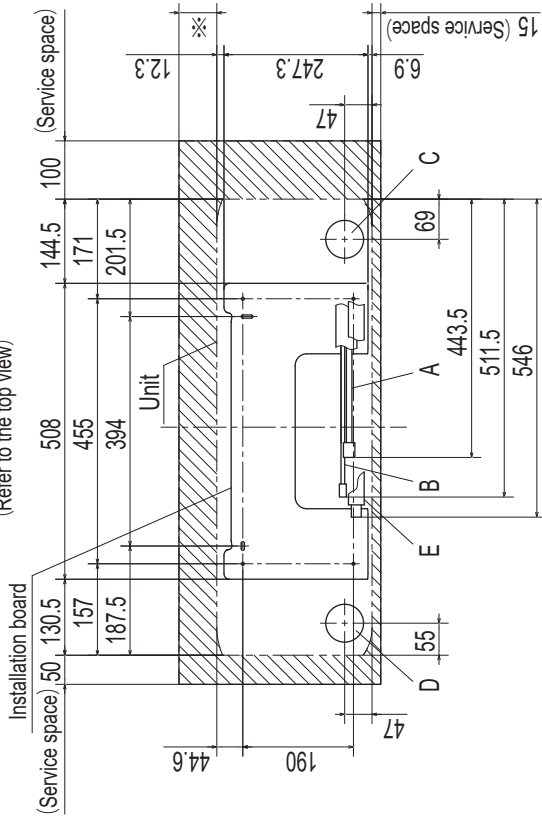
Unit:mm

(2) Wall mounted type (SKM-ZSP series)
Models SKM15, 20, 25, 35ZSP-W

| Symbol | Content |
|--------|--|
| A | Gas piping φ 9.52 (3/8") (Flare) |
| B | Liquid piping φ 6.35 (1/4") (Flare) |
| C | Hole on wall for right rear piping (φ 65) |
| D | Hole on wall for left rear piping (φ 65) |
| E | Drain hose VP16 |
| F | Outlet for wiring |
| G | Outlet for piping (on both side) |

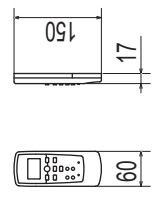


| | | |
|---|------------------------------|----|
| ※ | Service space Recommendation | 65 |
| | | 80 |



Space for installation and service when viewing from the front

Wireless remote control



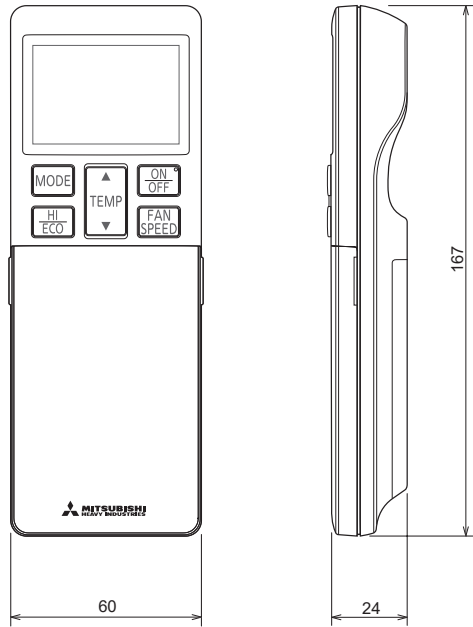
Note (1) The model name label is attached on the underside of the indoor unit.

Unit:mm

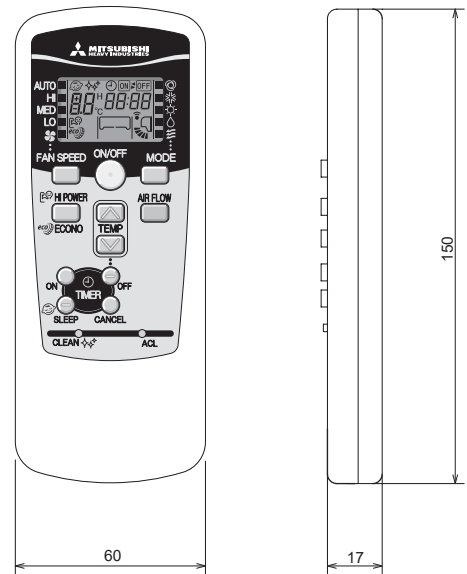
(3) Remote control
(a) Wireless remote control

Unit:mm

Model SRK (Standard parts)

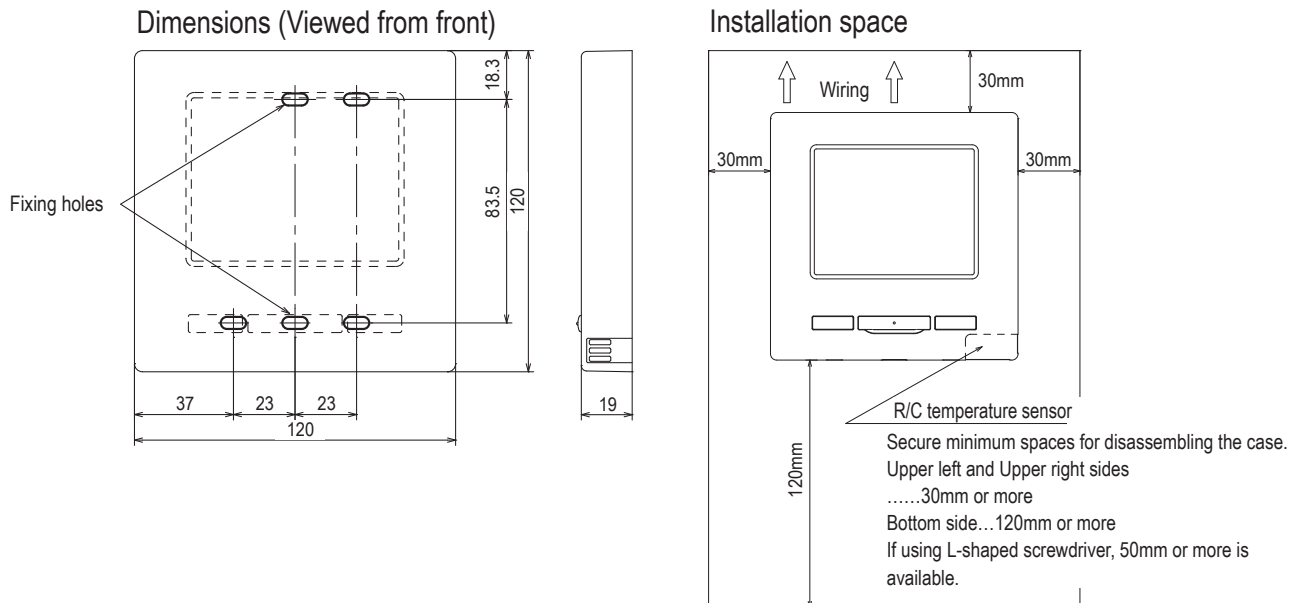


Model SKM (Standard parts)



(b) Wired remote control (Option parts)

Interface kit (SC-BIKN2-E) is required to use the wired remote control.

(i) Model RC-EX3A

• **Do not install the remote control at following places.**

- ① It could cause break-down or deformation of remote control.
 - Where it is exposed to direct sunlight
 - Where the ambient temperature becomes 0°C or below, or 40°C or above
 - Where the surface is not flat
 - Where the strength of installation area is insufficient
- ② Moisture may be attached to internal parts of the remote control, resulting in a display failure.
 - Place with high humidity where condensation occurs on the remote control
 - Where the remote control gets wet
- ③ Accurate room temperature may not be detected using the temperature sensor of the remote control.
 - Where the average room temperature cannot be detected
 - Place near the equipment to generate heat
 - Place affected by outside air in opening/closing the door
 - Place exposed to direct sunlight or wind from air-conditioner
 - Where the difference between wall and room temperature is large
- ④ When you are using the automatic grille up and down panel in the IU, you may not be able to confirm the up and down motion.
 - Where the IU cannot be visually confirmed

R/C cable: 0.3mm² × 2 cores

When the cable length is longer than 100m, the max size for wires used in the R/C case is 0.5mm². Connect them to wires of larger size near the outside of R/C. When wires are connected, take measures to prevent water, etc. from entering inside.

| | |
|--------|-------------------------------|
| ≦ 200m | 0.5mm ² × 2 cores |
| ≦ 300m | 0.75mm ² × 2 cores |
| ≦ 400m | 1.25mm ² × 2 cores |
| ≦ 600m | 2.0mm ² × 2 cores |

• **When installing the unit at a hospital, telecommunication facility, etc., take measures to suppress electric noises.**

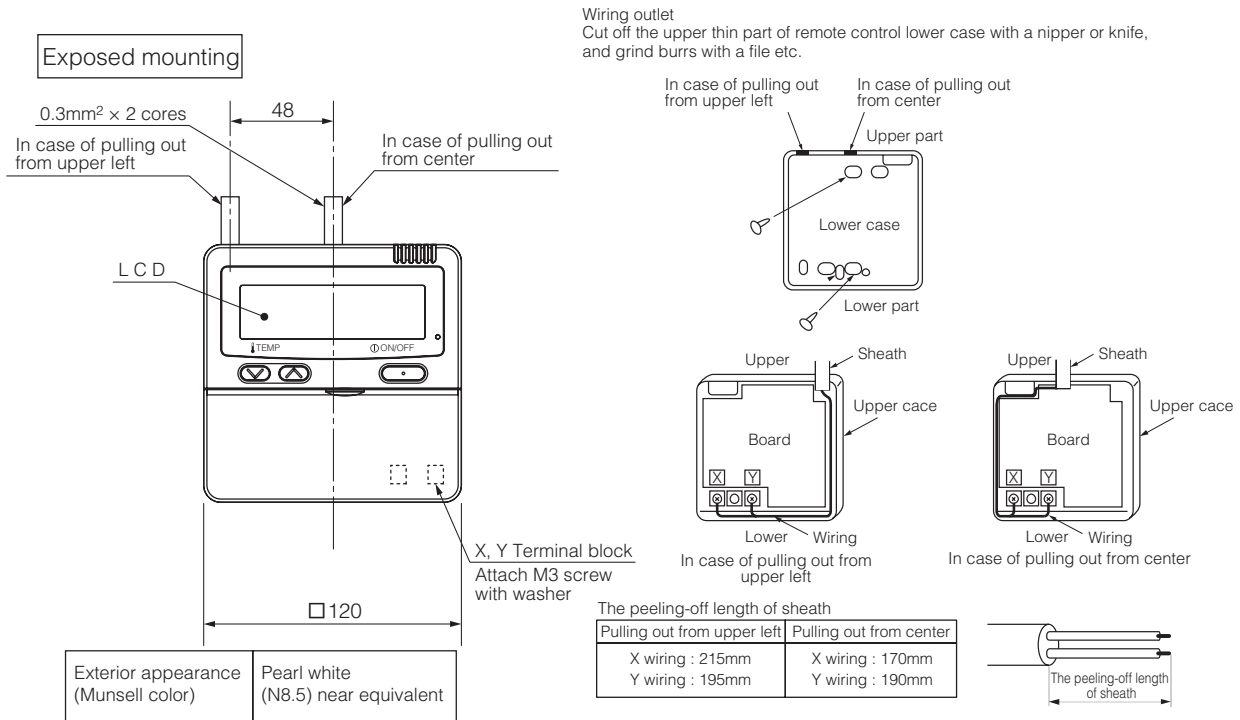
It could cause malfunction or break-down due to hazardous effects on the inverter, private power generator, high frequency medical equipment, radio communication equipment, etc.

The influences transmitted from the remote control to medical or communication equipment could disrupt medical activities, video broadcasting or cause noise interference.

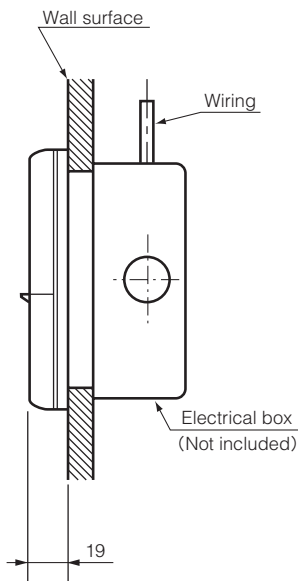
Adapted RoHS directive

PJZ000Z333

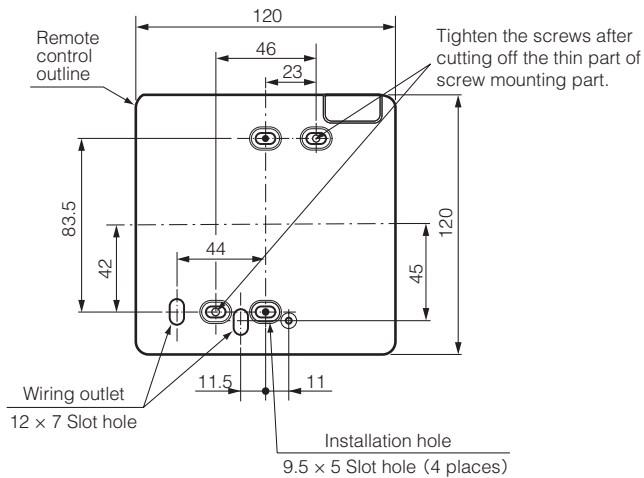
(ii) Model RC-E5



Embedded mounting



Remote control installation dimensions



(1) Installation screw for remote control
M4 Screw (2 pieces)

Unit:mm

Wiring specifications

(1) If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm². Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.

| Length | Wiring thickness |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| 100 to 200m | 0.5mm ² × 2 cores |
| Under 300m | 0.75mm ² × 2 cores |
| Under 400m | 1.25mm ² × 2 cores |
| Under 600m | 2.0mm ² × 2 cores |

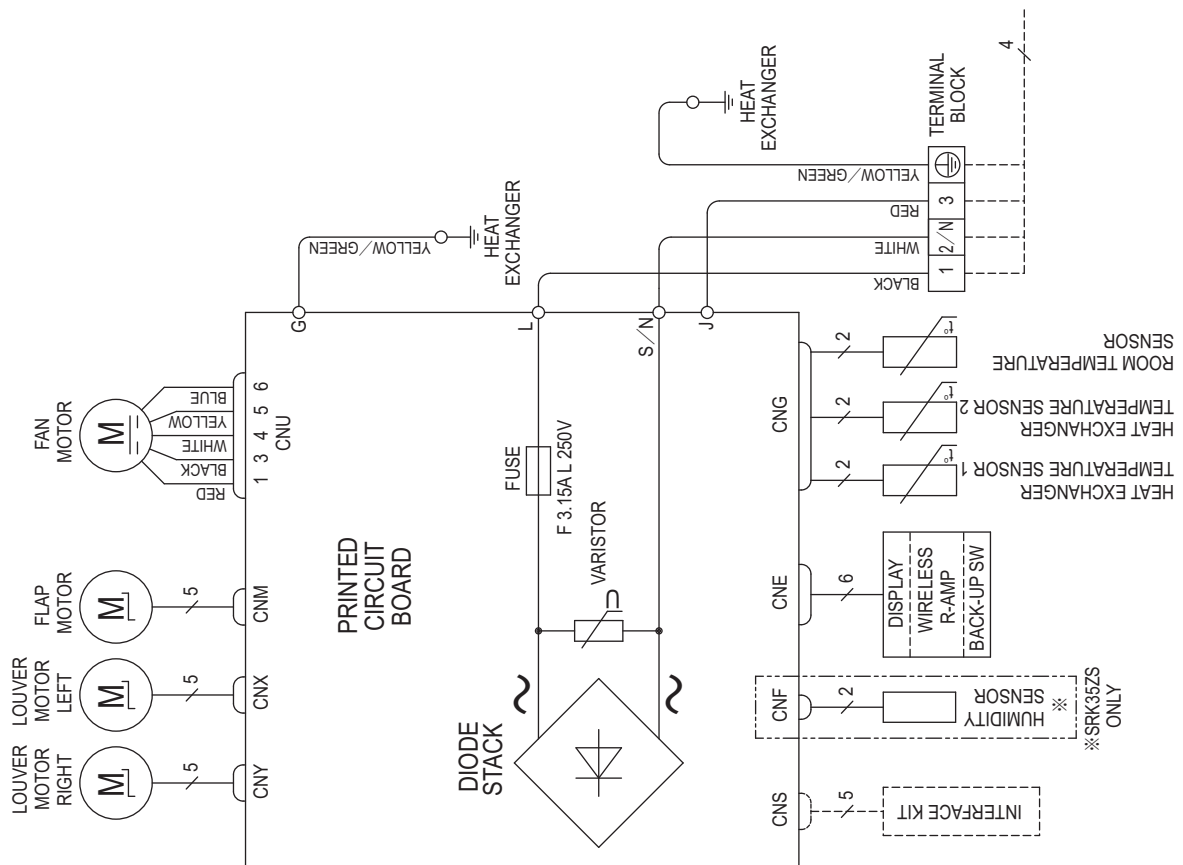
PJZ000Z295

2.3 Electrical wiring

(1) Wall mounted type (SRK-ZS series)

(a) Models SRK20, 25, 35ZS-W, -WB, -WT

| Item | Description |
|------|-------------|
| CNE | Connector |
| CNF | |
| CNG | |
| CNM | |
| CNS | |
| CNU | |
| CNX | |
| CNY | |

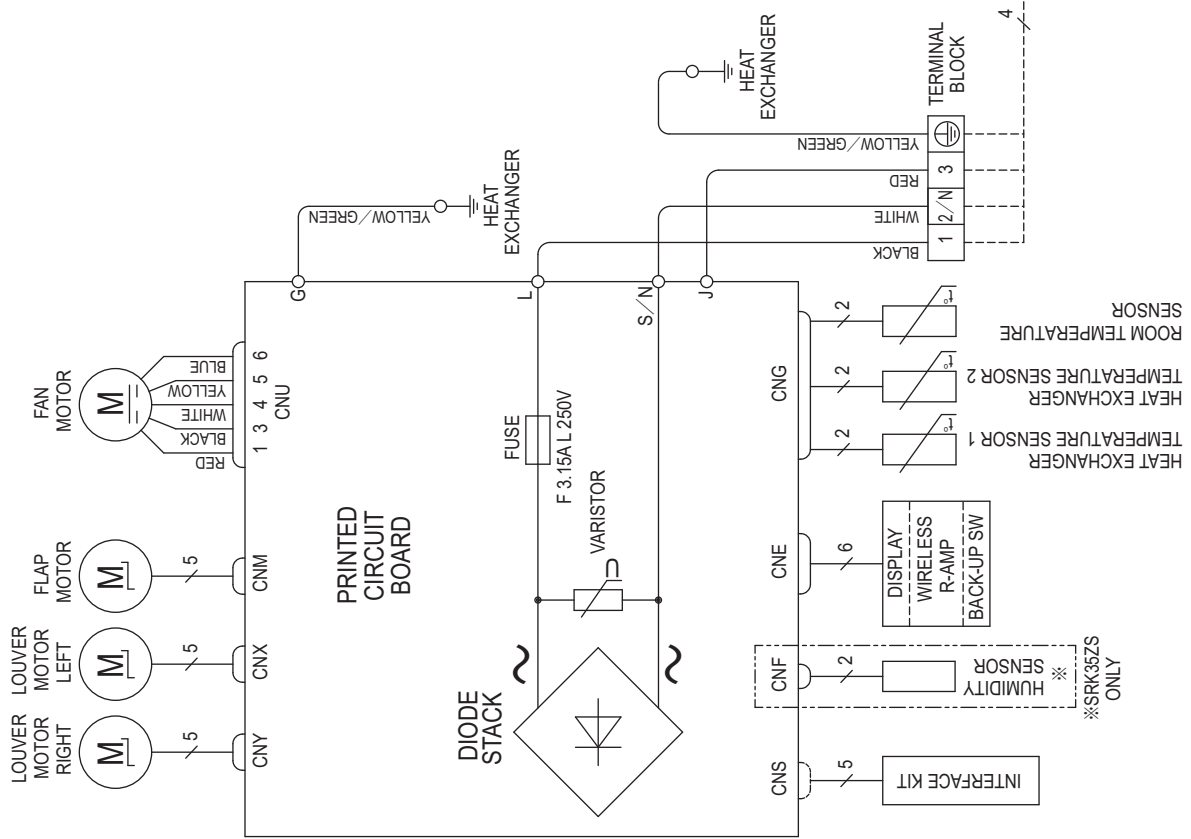


Power source
1 Phase
220-240V 50Hz
220V 60Hz
TO OUTDOOR UNIT

POWER CABLE 1 2
SIGNAL WIRE 3
EARTH WIRE 4

(b) Models SRK15, 20, 25, 35ZS-WF, -WFB, -WFT

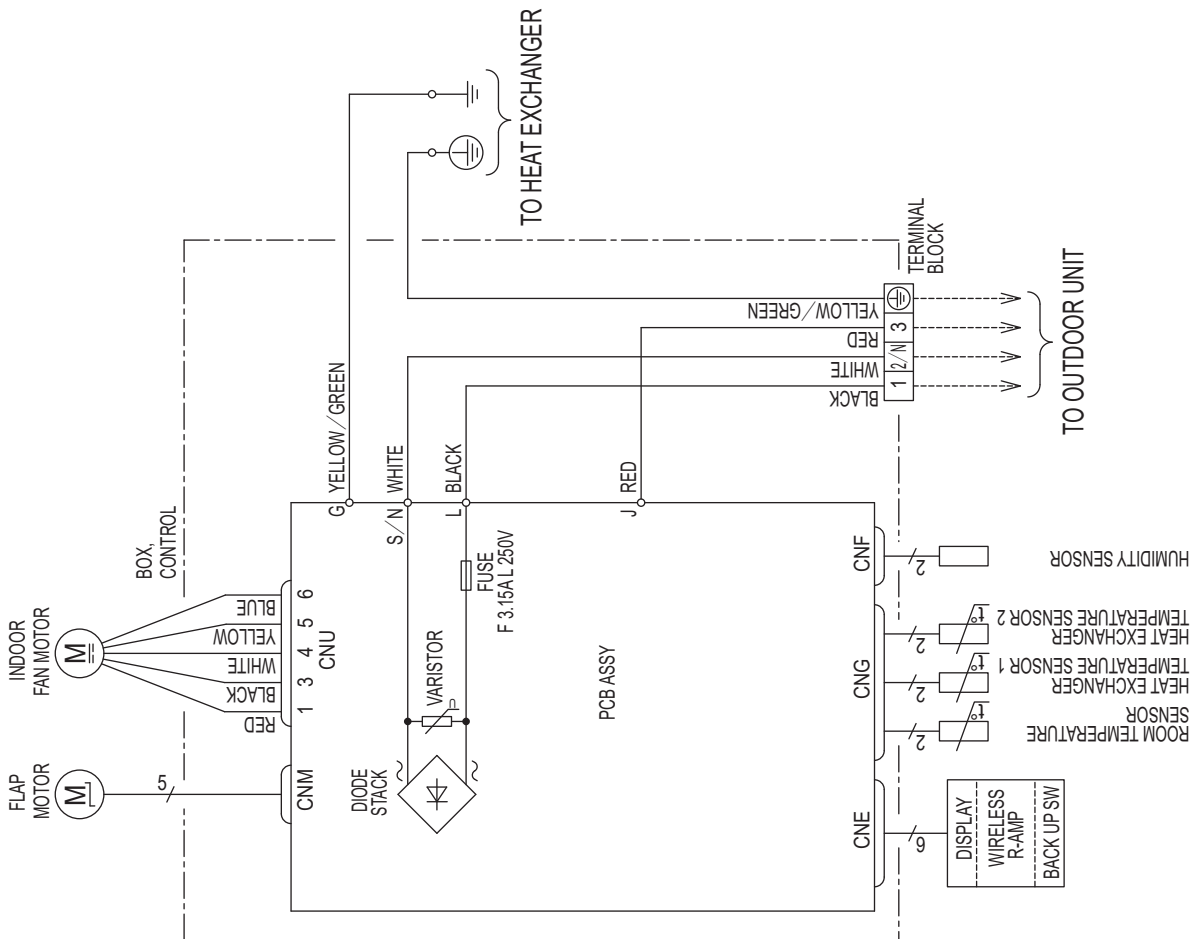
| Item | Description |
|------|-------------|
| CNE | Connector |
| CNF | |
| CNG | |
| CNM | |
| CNS | |
| CNU | |
| CNX | |
| CNY | |



RWA000Z427

(2) Wall mounted type (SKM-ZSP series)
 Models SKM15, 20, 25, 35ZSP-W

| Item | Description |
|------|-------------|
| CNE | Connector |
| CNF | |
| CNG | |
| CNM | |
| CNU | |



2.4 Noise level

(1) Wall mounted type (SRK-ZS series)

(a) Sound power level

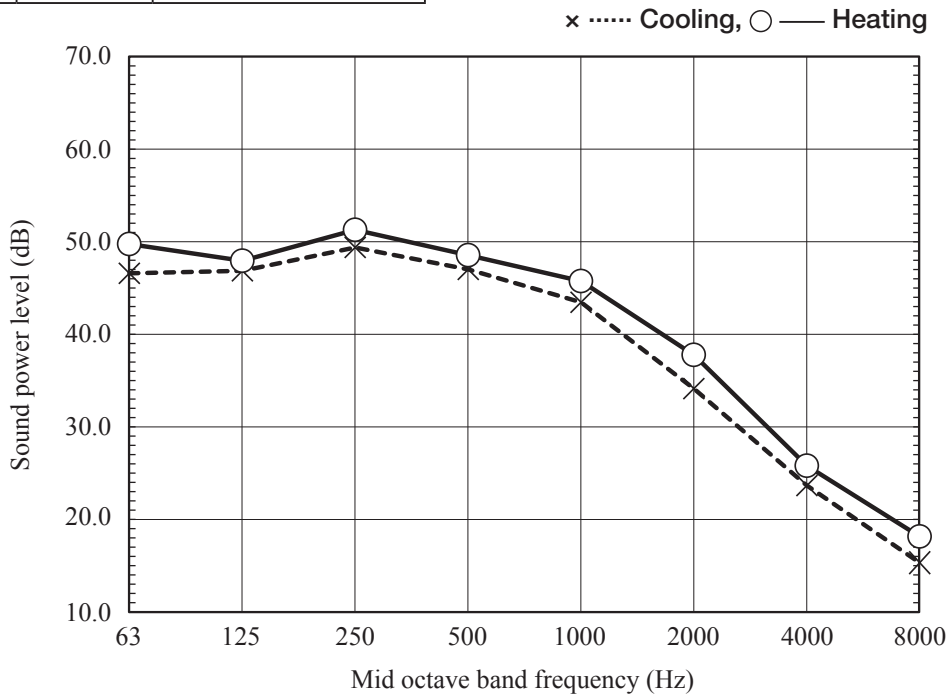
Models SRK15ZS-WF, -WFB, -WFT

(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 48 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 50 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|



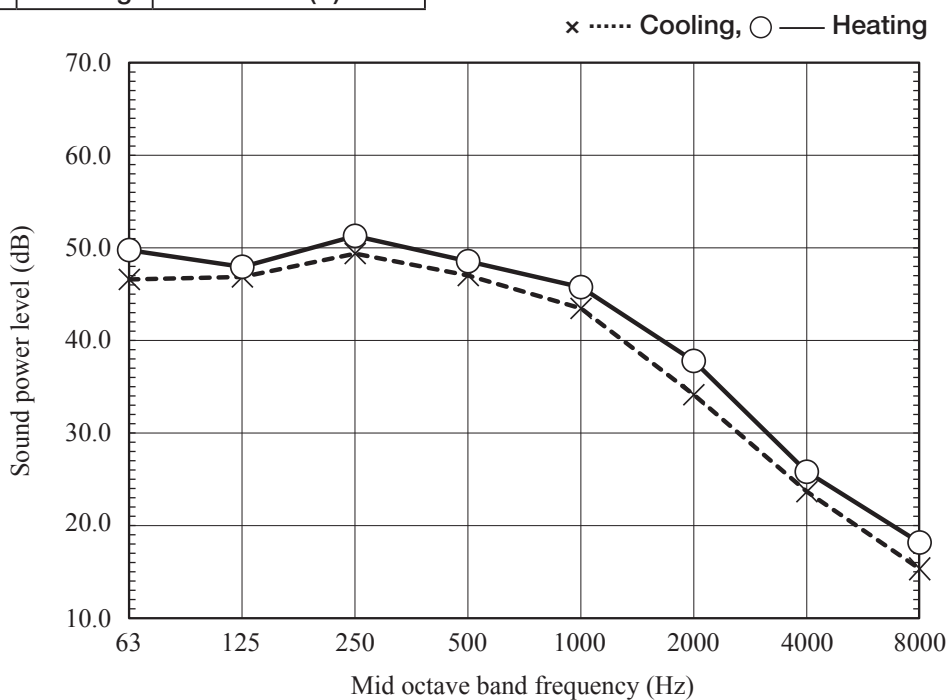
Models SRK20ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT

(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 48 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 50 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

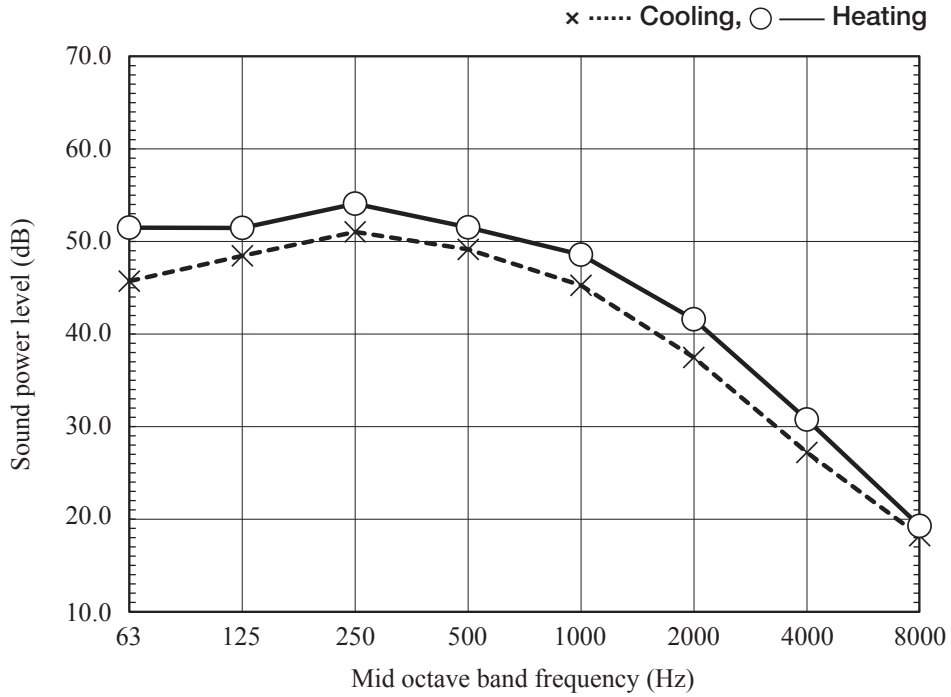
| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|



Models SRK25ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 50 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 53 dB(A) |

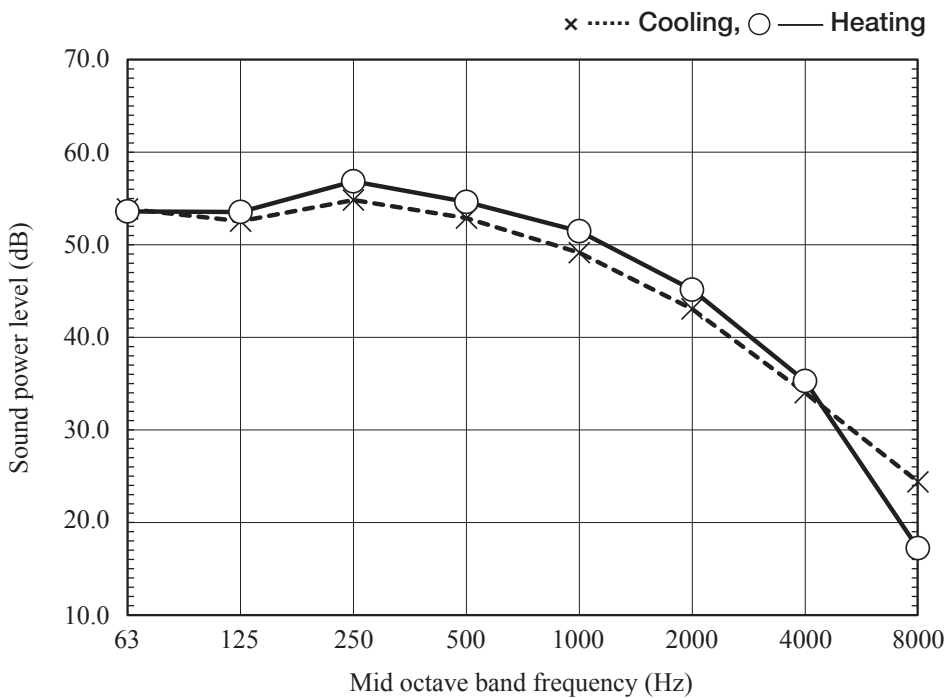
| | |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |



Models SRK35ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 54 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 56 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |



(b) Sound pressure level

(i) Rated capacity value

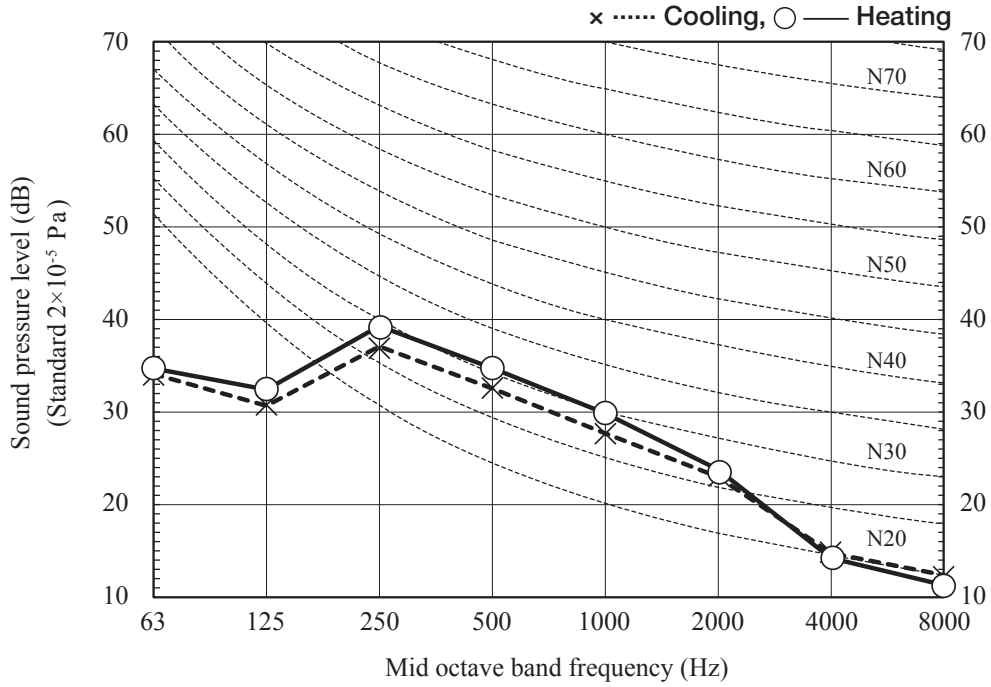
Models SRK15ZS-WF, -WFB, -WFT
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 34 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 36 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|

● Mike position



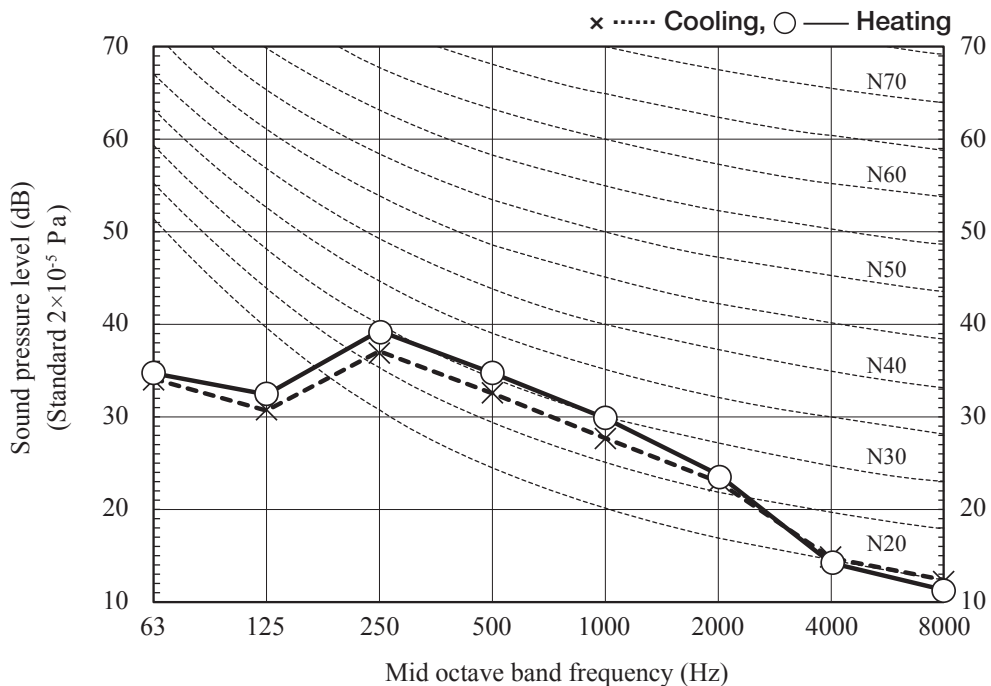
Models SRK20ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 34 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 36 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|

● Mike position



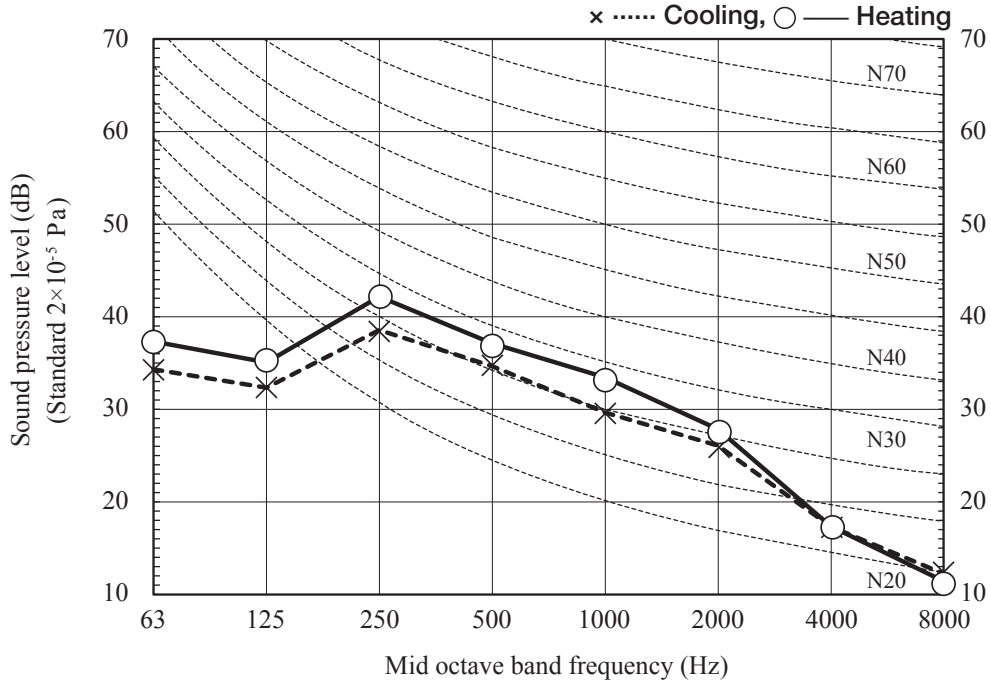
Models SRK25ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 36 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 39 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|

●Mike position



Models SRK35ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT

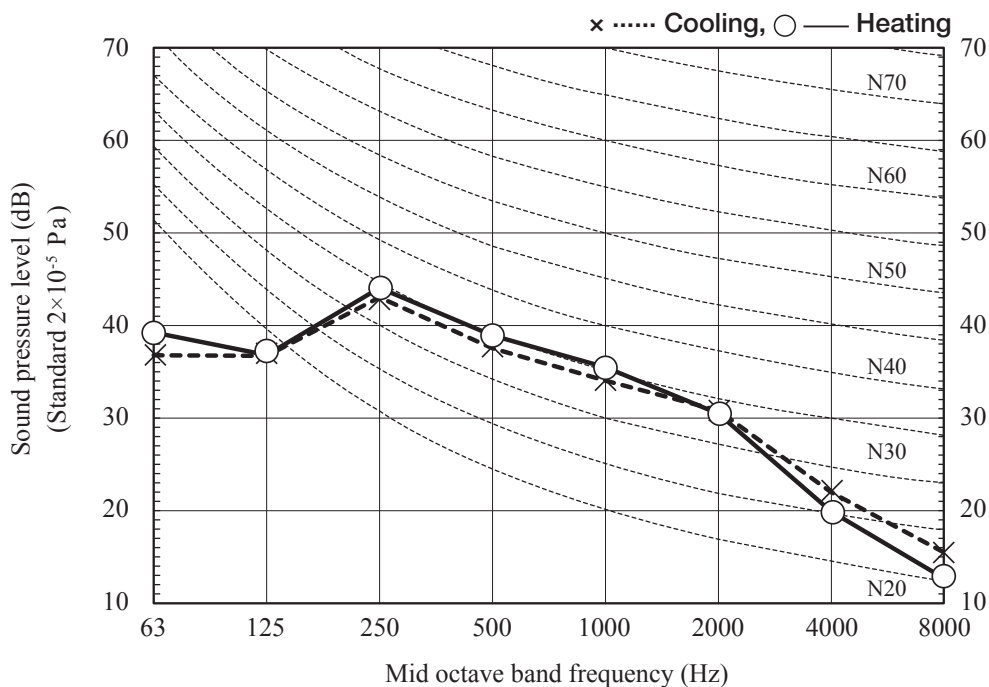
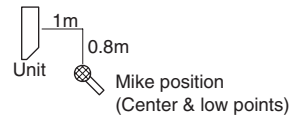
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 40 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 41 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|

●Mike position



(ii) Each fan speed mode

Models SRK15ZS-WF, -WFB, -WFT

(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 25 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 29 dB(A) |

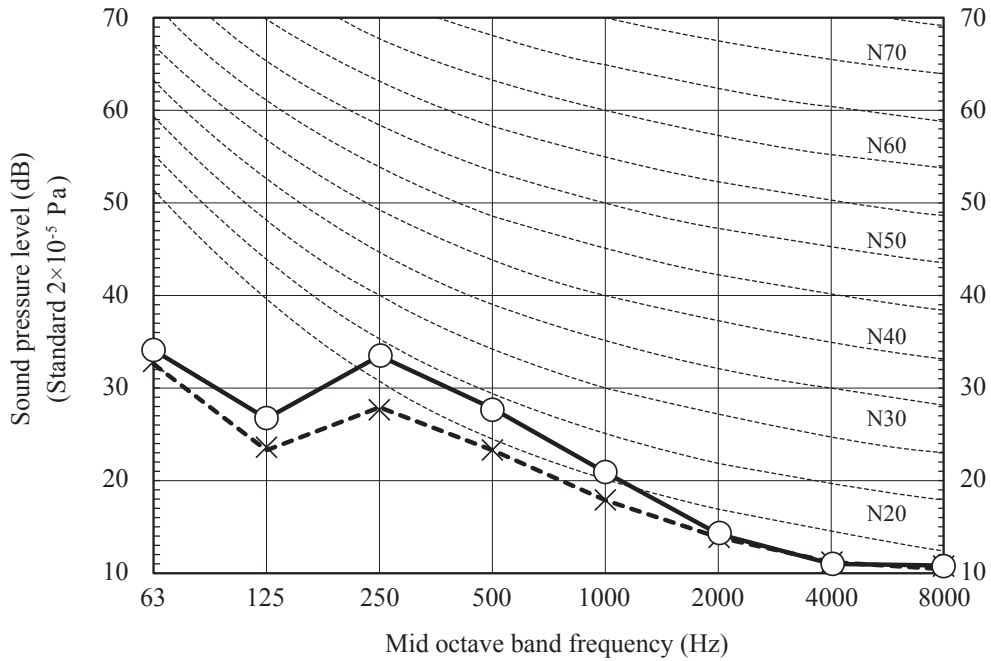
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Me |
|------|----|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 22 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 23 dB(A) |

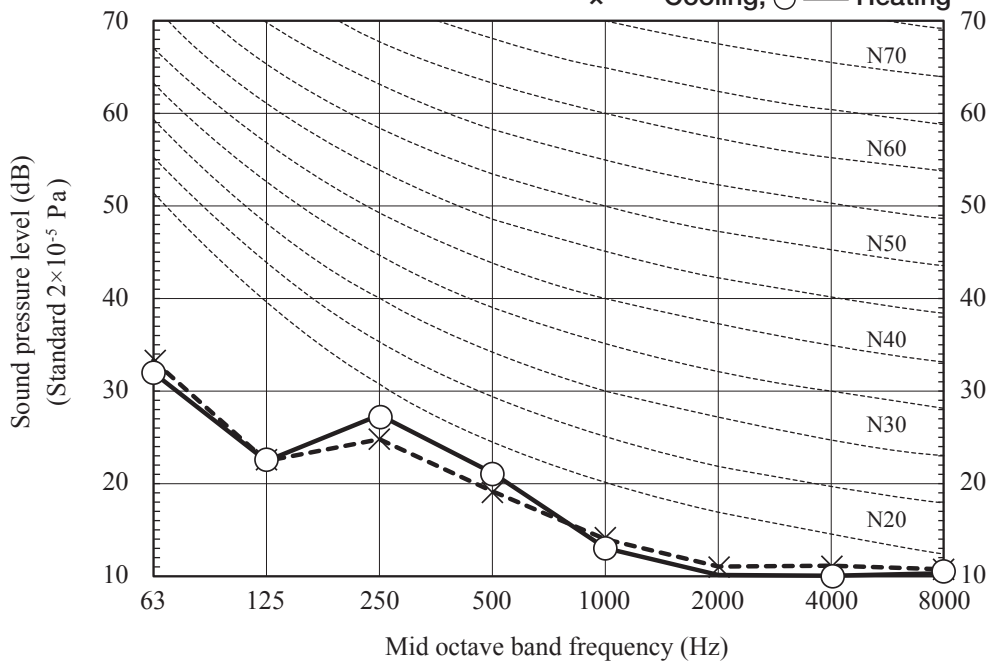
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Lo |
|------|----|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 19 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 19 dB(A) |

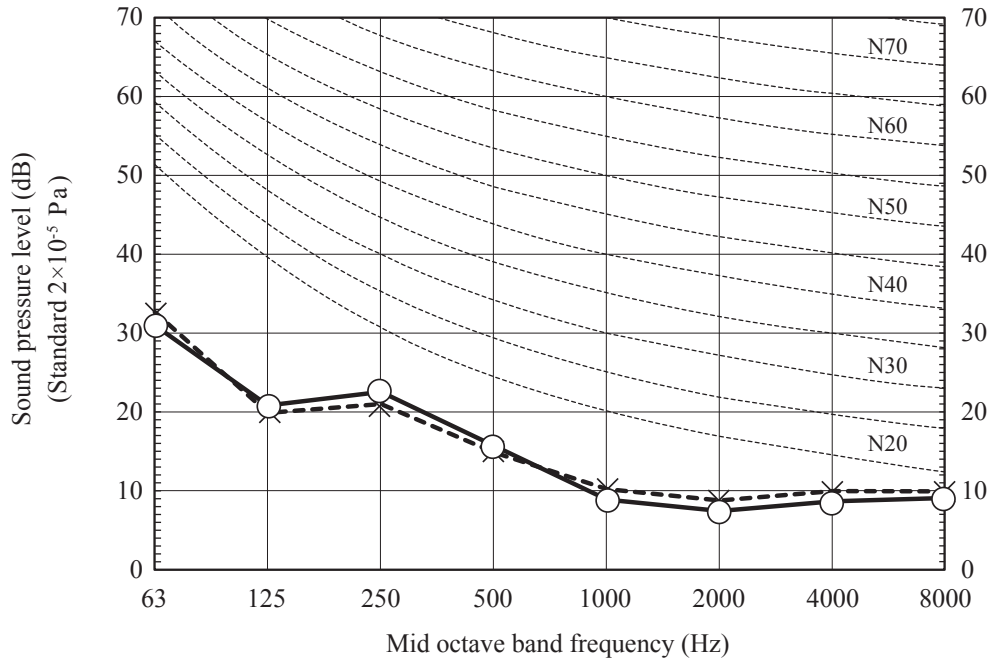
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|-----|
| MODE | ULo |
|------|-----|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



Models SRK20ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT

(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 25 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 29 dB(A) |

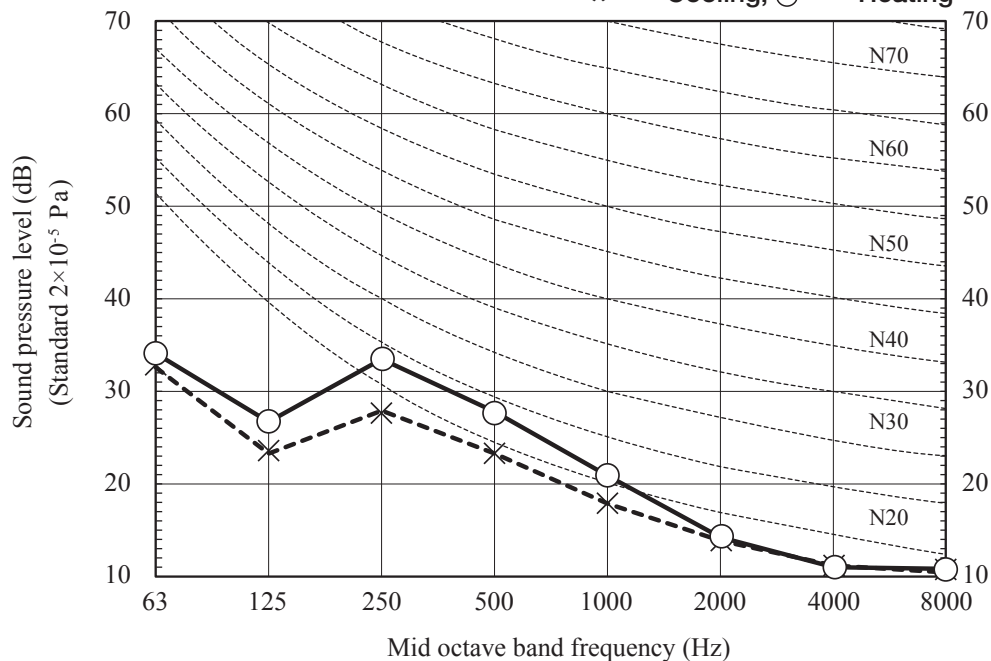
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Me |
|------|----|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(Indoor unit)

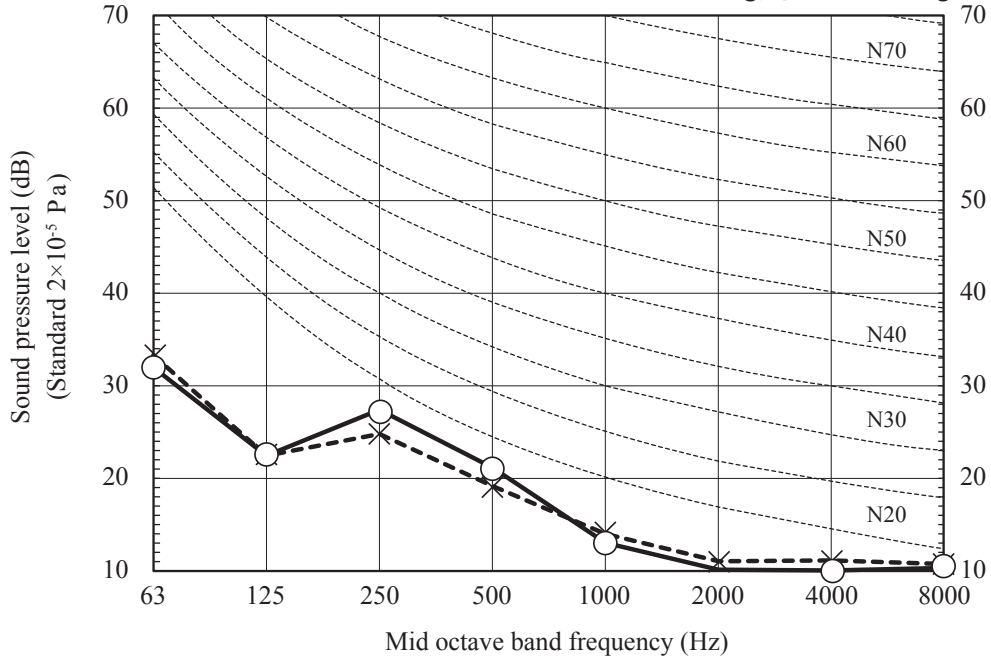
| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 22 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 23 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| MODE | Lo |

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(Indoor unit)

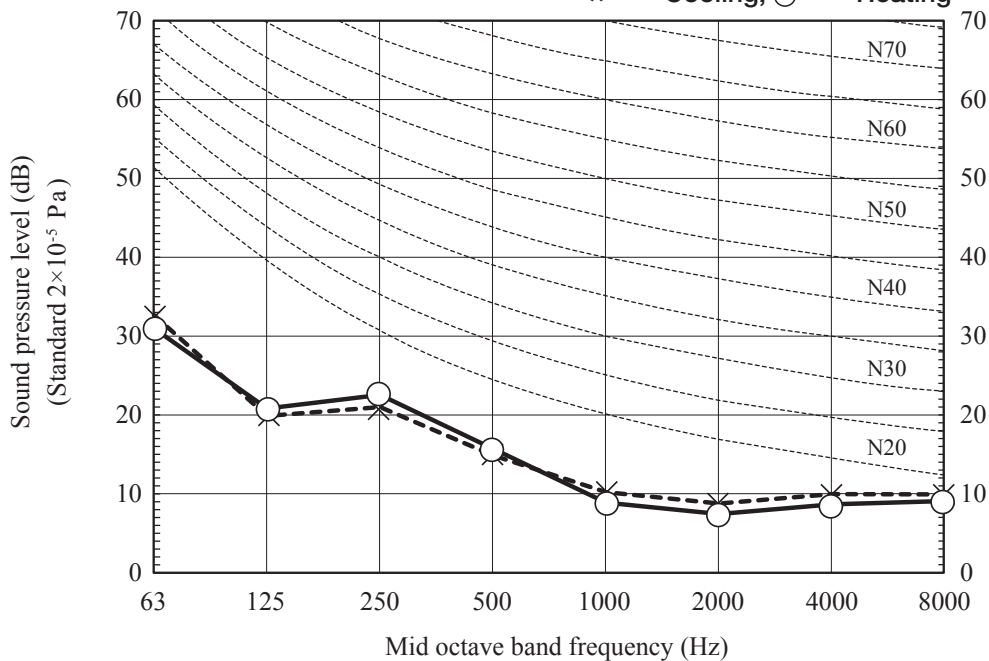
| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 19 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 19 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| MODE | ULo |

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



Models SRK25ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Me |
|------|----|

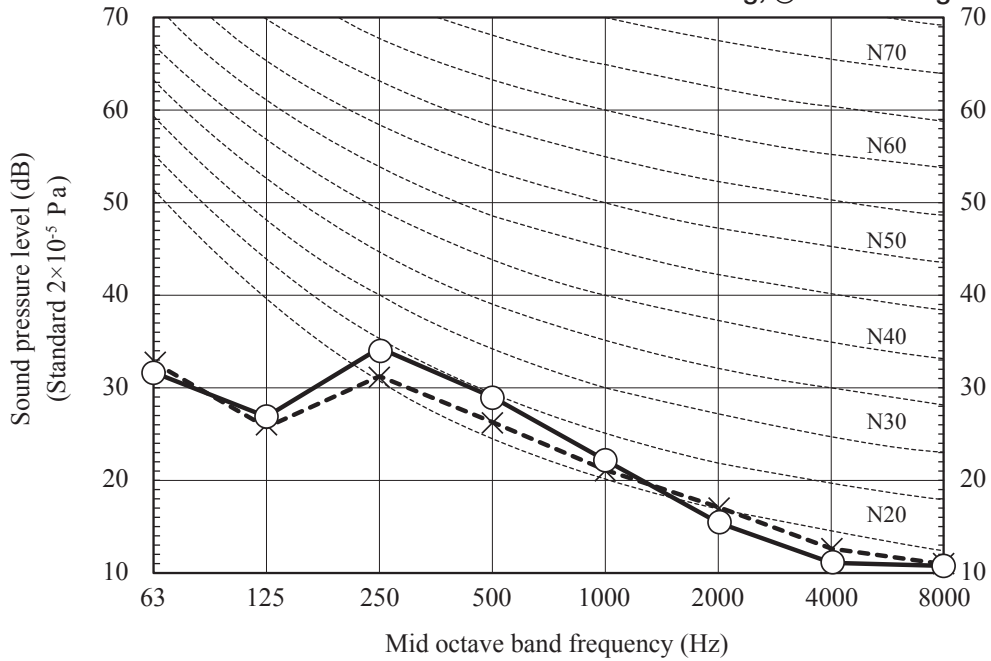
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 28 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 30 dB(A) |

● Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Lo |
|------|----|

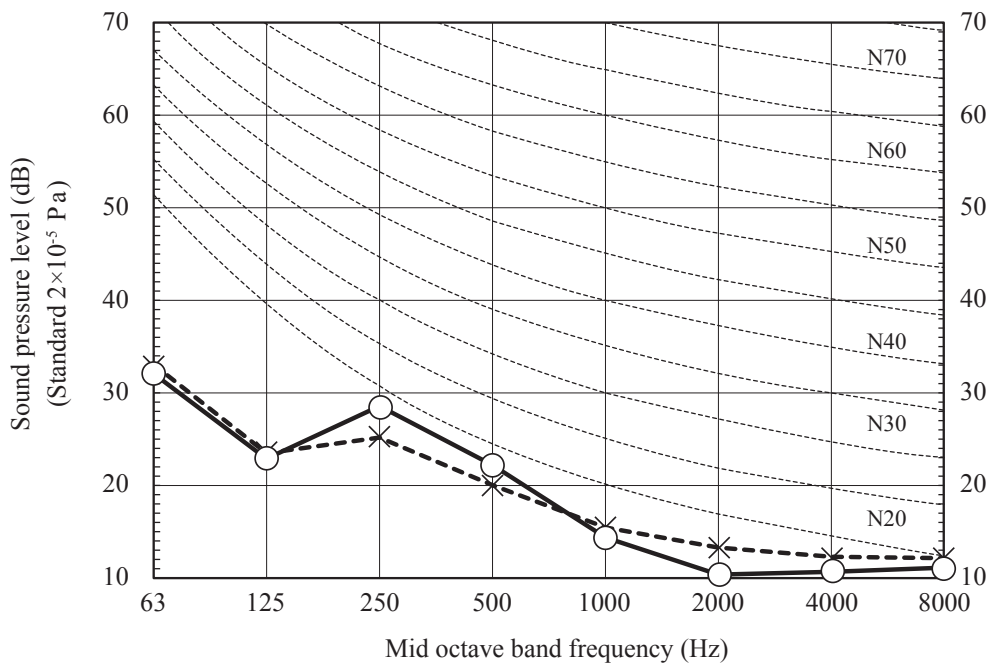
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 23 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 24 dB(A) |

● Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(Indoor unit)

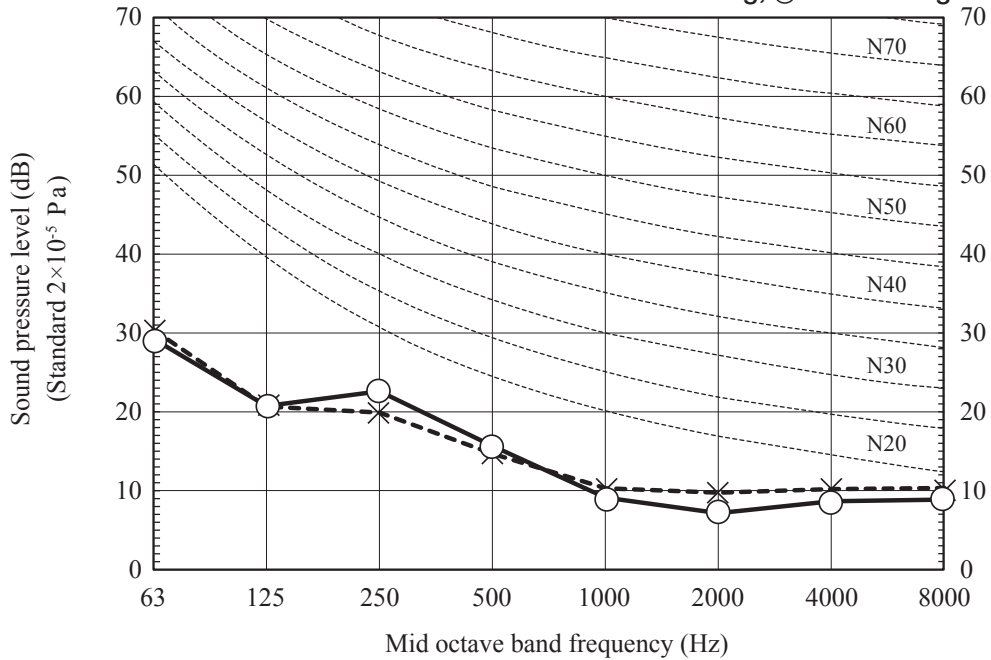
| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 19 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 19 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| MODE | ULo |

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



Models SRK35ZS-W, -WB, -WT, -WF, -WFB, -WFT

(Indoor unit)

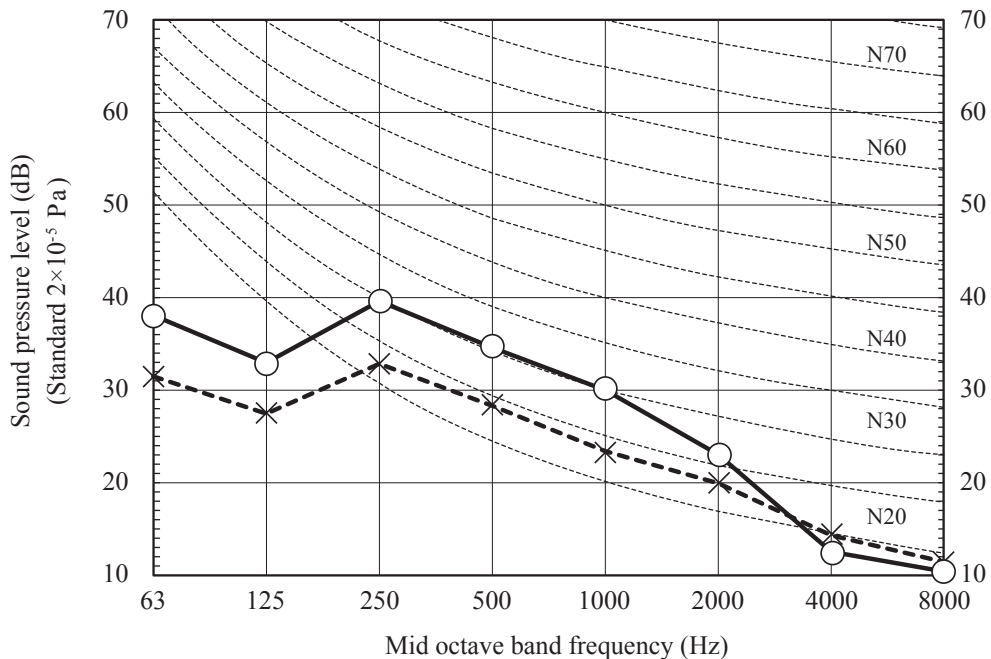
| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 30 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 36 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
| MODE | Me |

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 26 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 25 dB(A) |

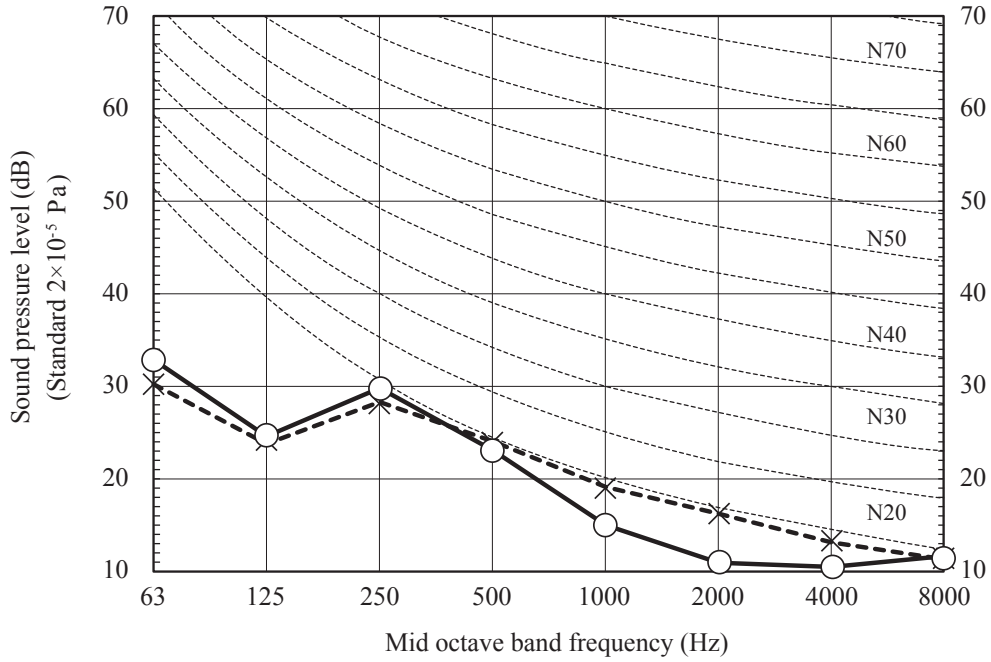
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Lo |
|------|----|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 19 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 19 dB(A) |

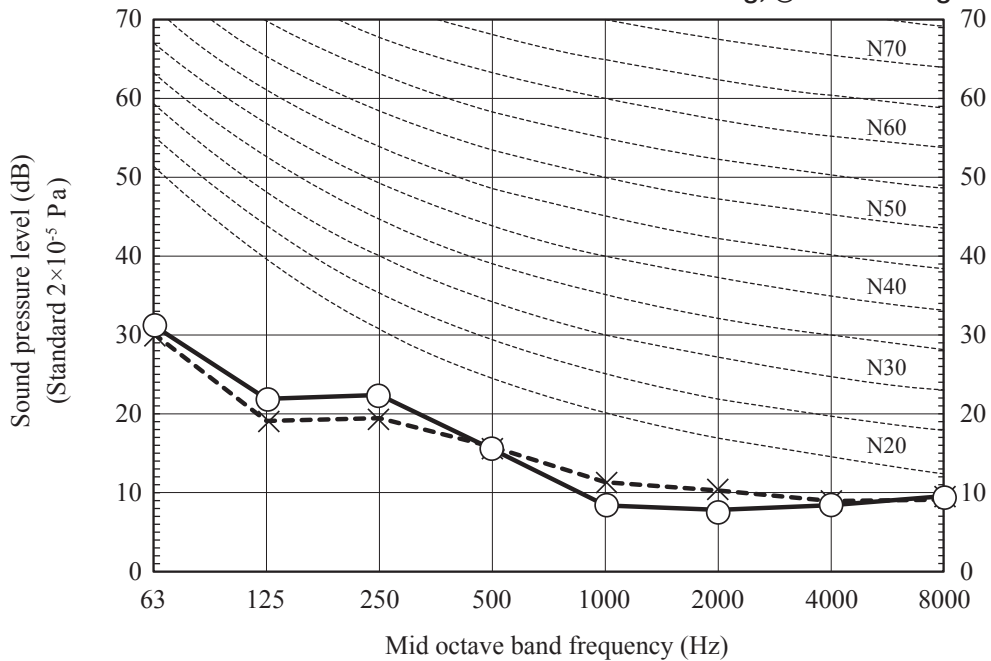
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|-----|
| MODE | ULo |
|------|-----|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(2) Wall mounted type (SKM-ZSP series)

(a) Sound power level

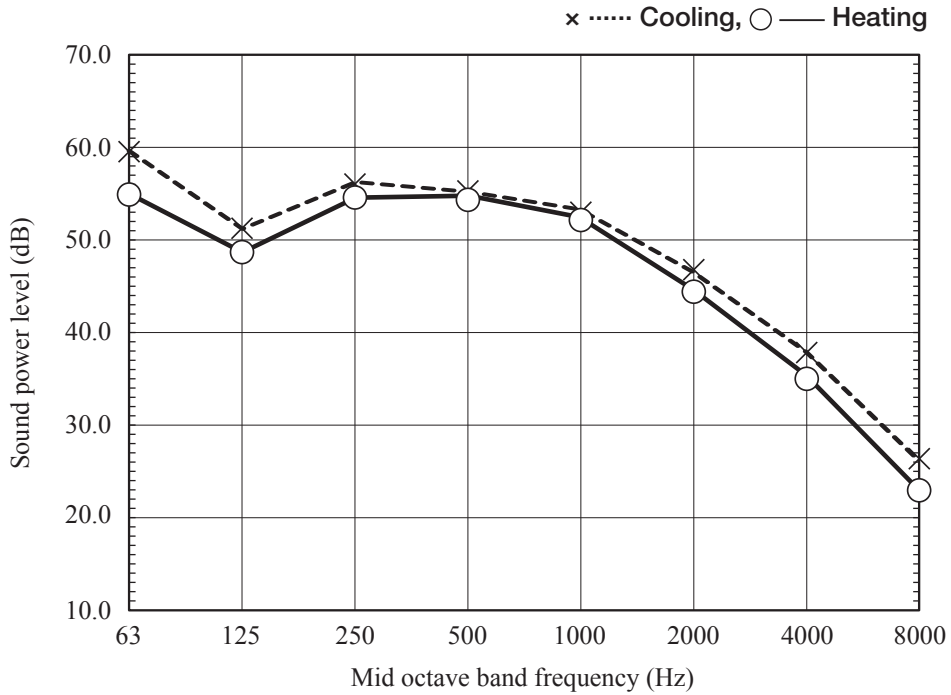
Models SKM15ZSP-W

(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 57 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 56 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|



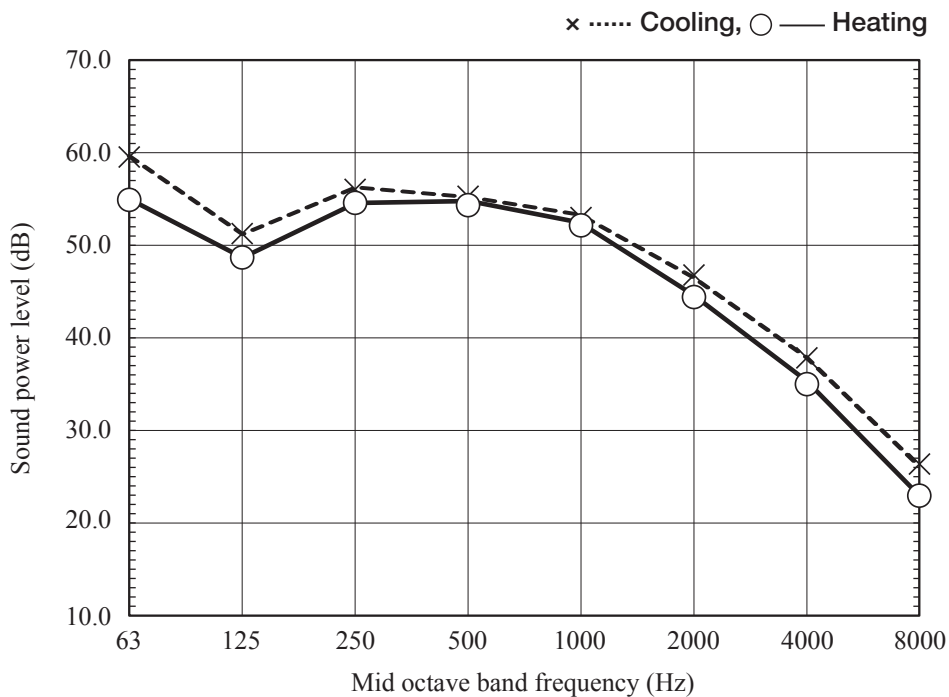
Model SKM20ZSP-W

(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 57 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 56 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|

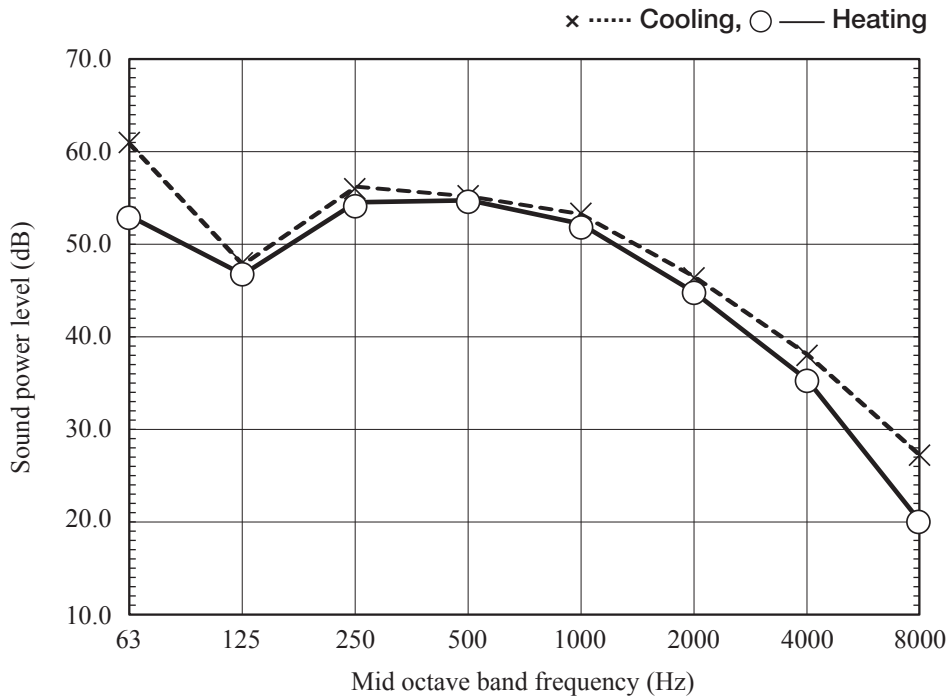


Model SKM25ZSP-W
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 57 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 56 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|

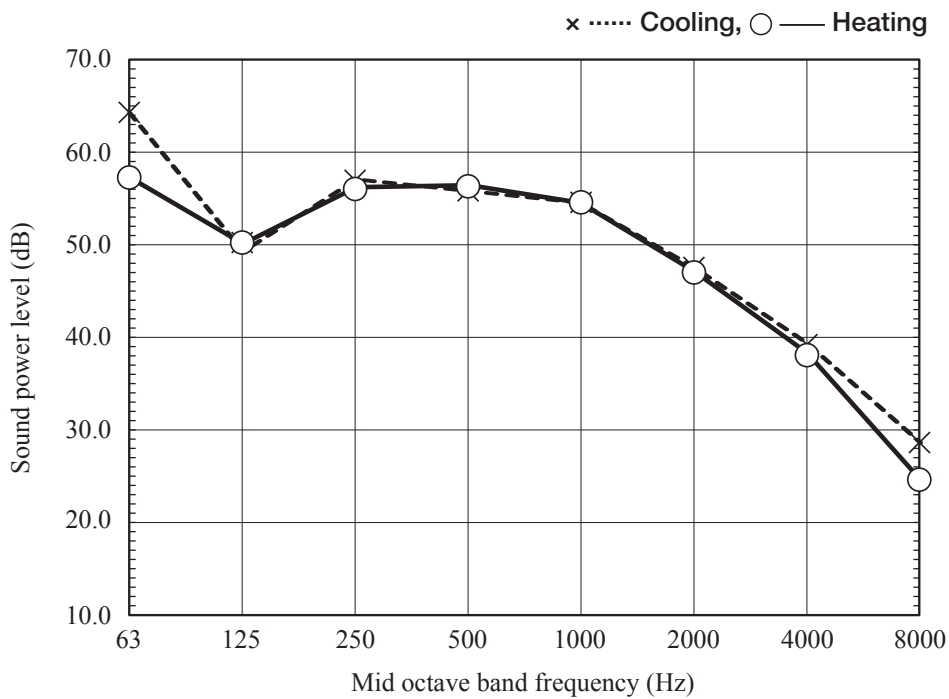


Model SKM35ZSP-W
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 58 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 58 dB(A) |

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|



(b) Sound pressure level
 (i) Rated capacity value
 Model SKM15ZSP-W

(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 42 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 41 dB(A) |

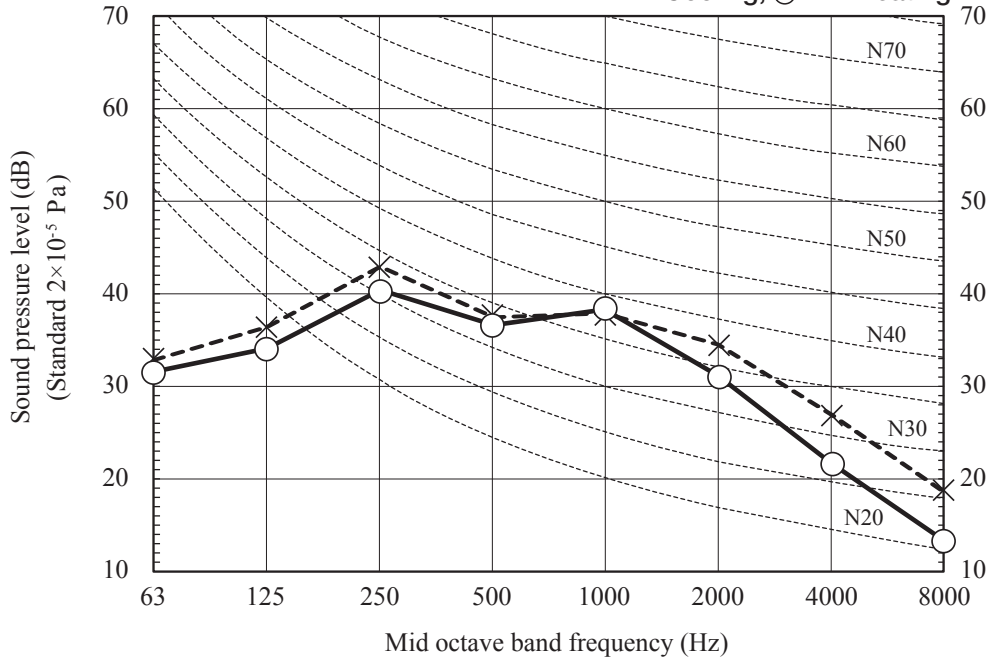
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



Model SKM20ZSP-W

(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 42 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 41 dB(A) |

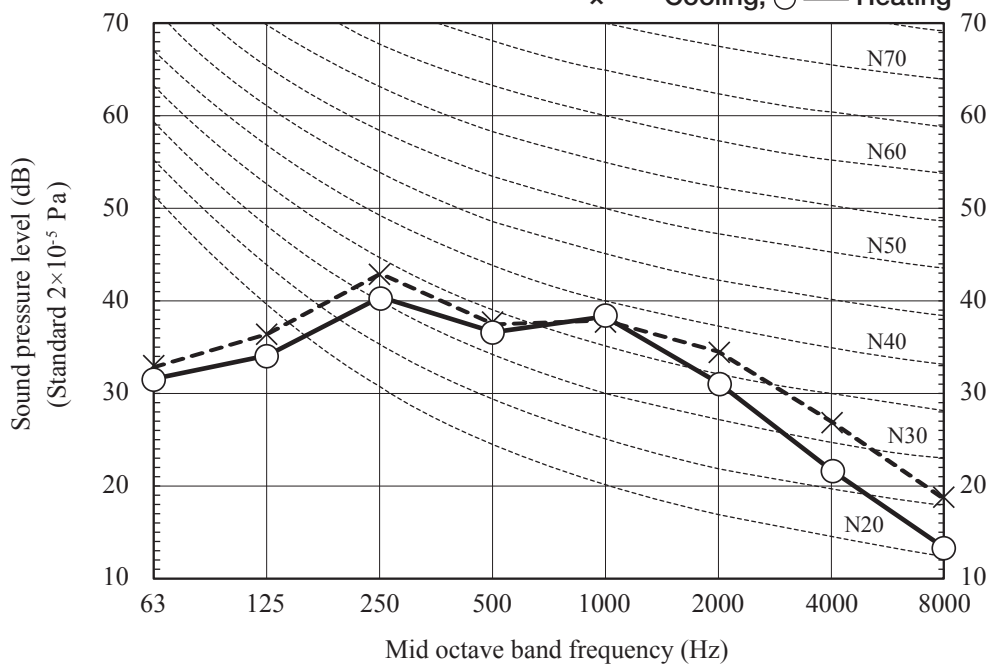
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



Model SKM25ZSP-W
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 43 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 41 dB(A) |

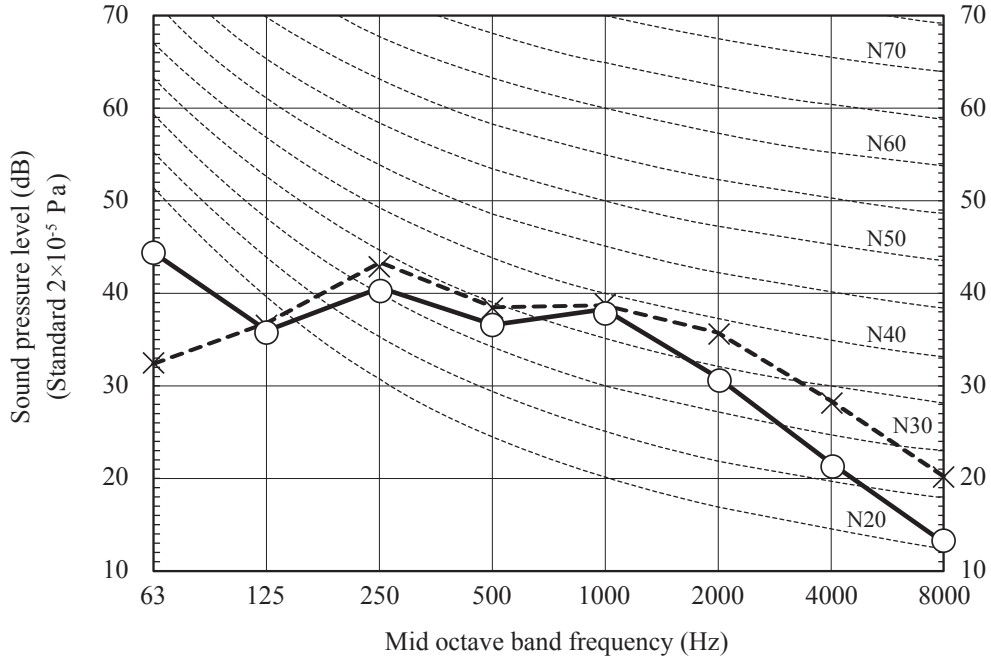
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|

●Mike position



× Cooling, ○ — Heating



Model SKM35ZSP-W

(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 44 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 42 dB(A) |

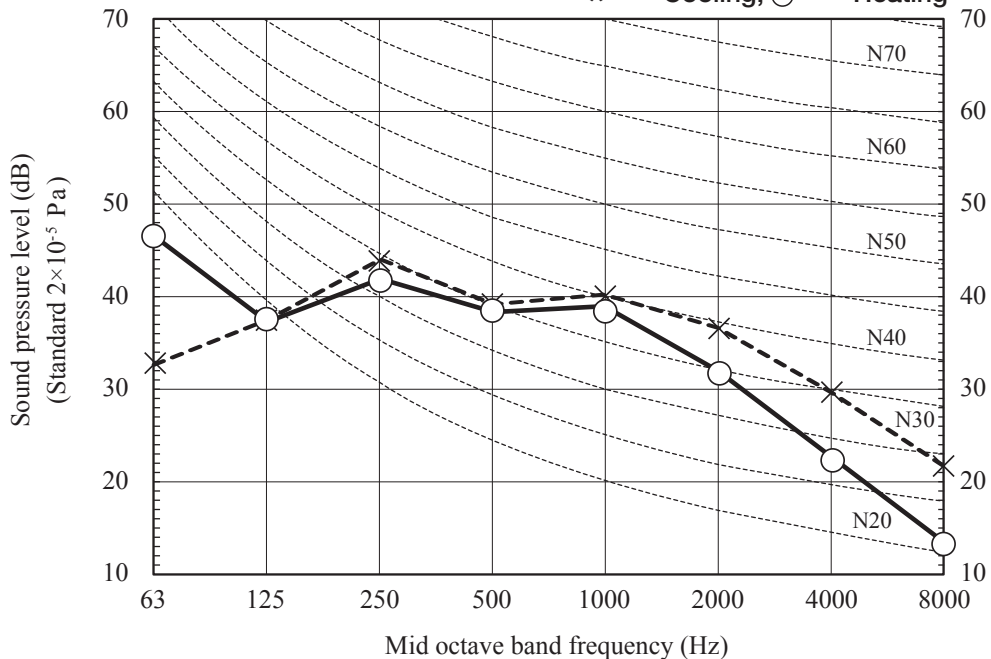
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|---------------------------|
| MODE | Rated capacity value (Hi) |
|------|---------------------------|

●Mike position



× Cooling, ○ — Heating



(ii) Each fan speed mode

Model SKM15ZSP-W

(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 35 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 36 dB(A) |

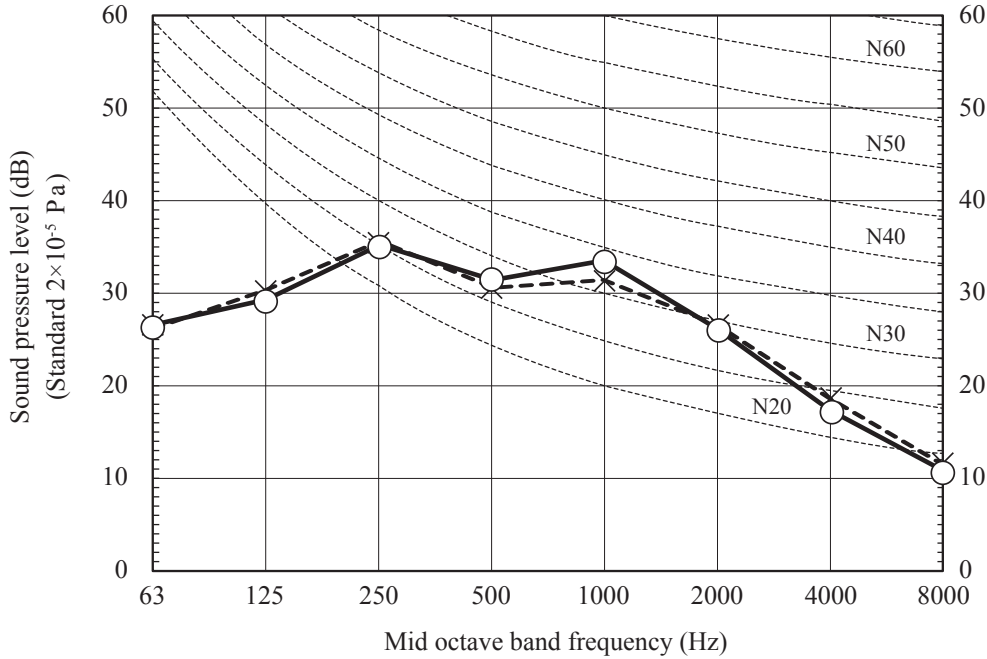
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Me |
|------|----|

● Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 22 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 26 dB(A) |

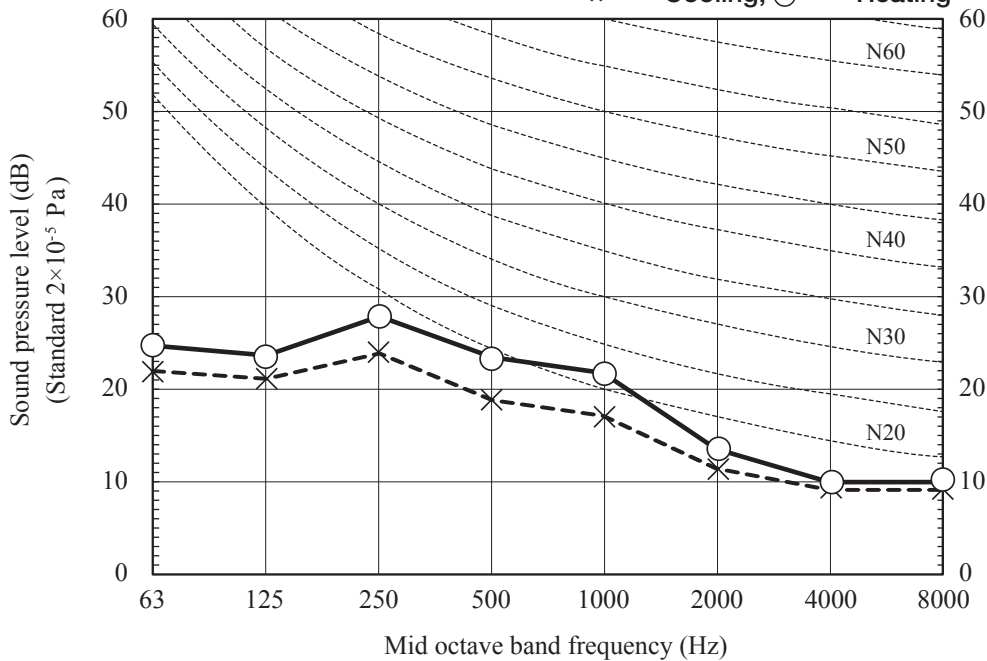
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Lo |
|------|----|

● Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



Model SKM20ZSP-W

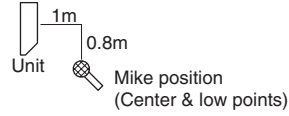
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 35 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 36 dB(A) |

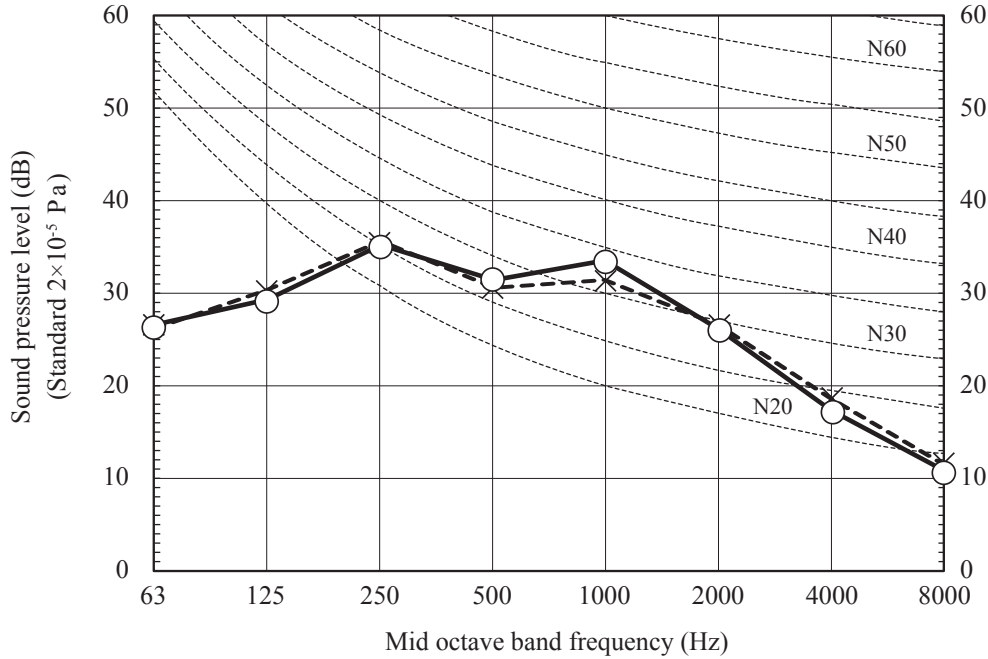
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Me |
|------|----|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 22 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 26 dB(A) |

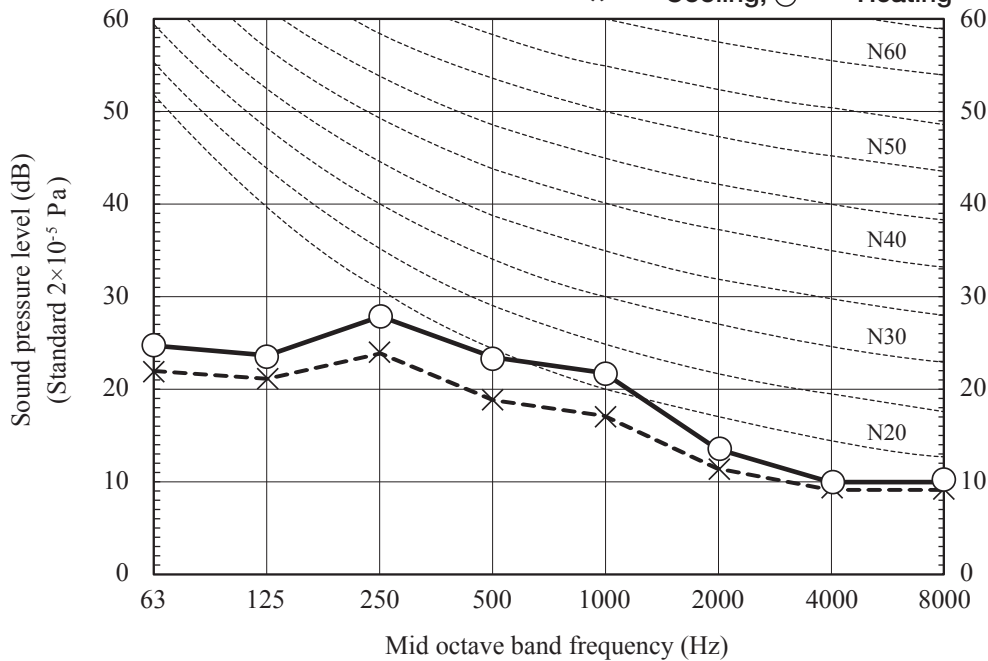
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Lo |
|------|----|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



Model SKM25ZSP-W

(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 36 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 36 dB(A) |

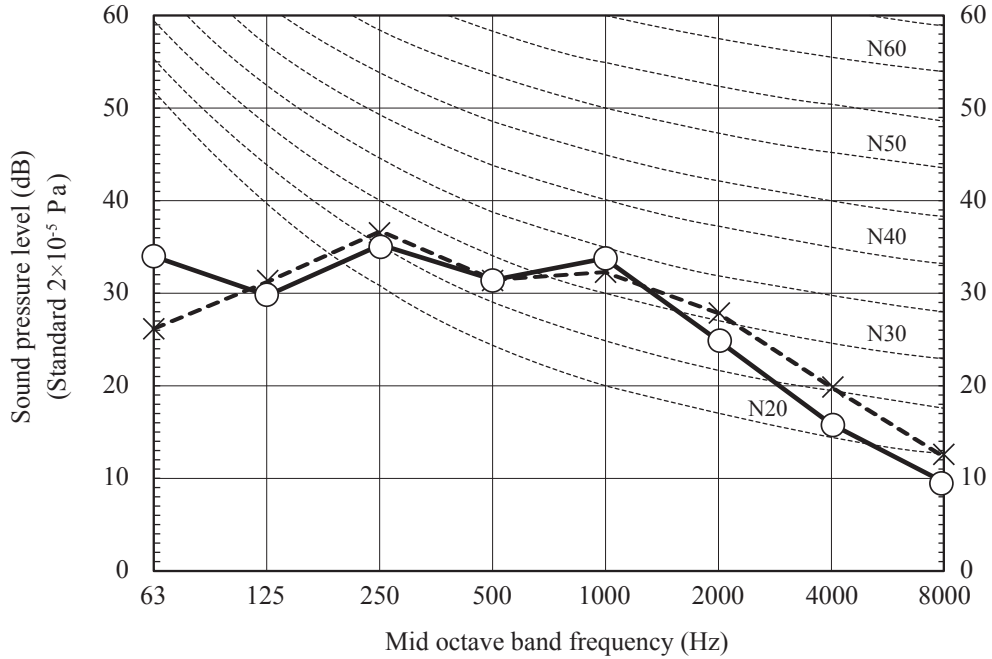
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Me |
|------|----|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 23 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 27 dB(A) |

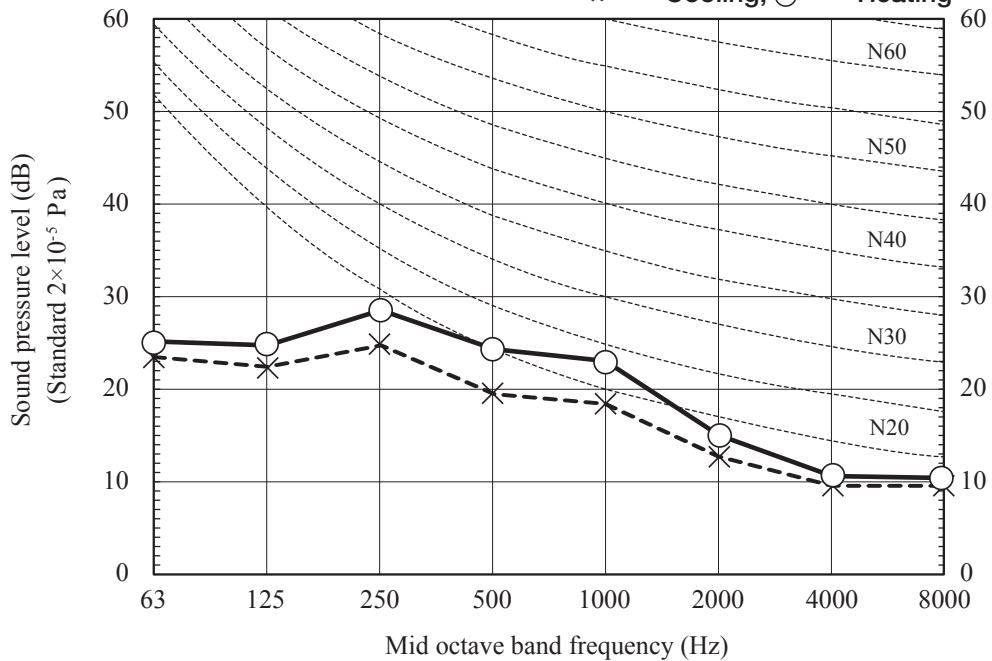
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Lo |
|------|----|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



Model SKM35ZSP-W

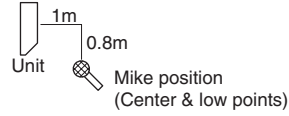
(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 37 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 37 dB(A) |

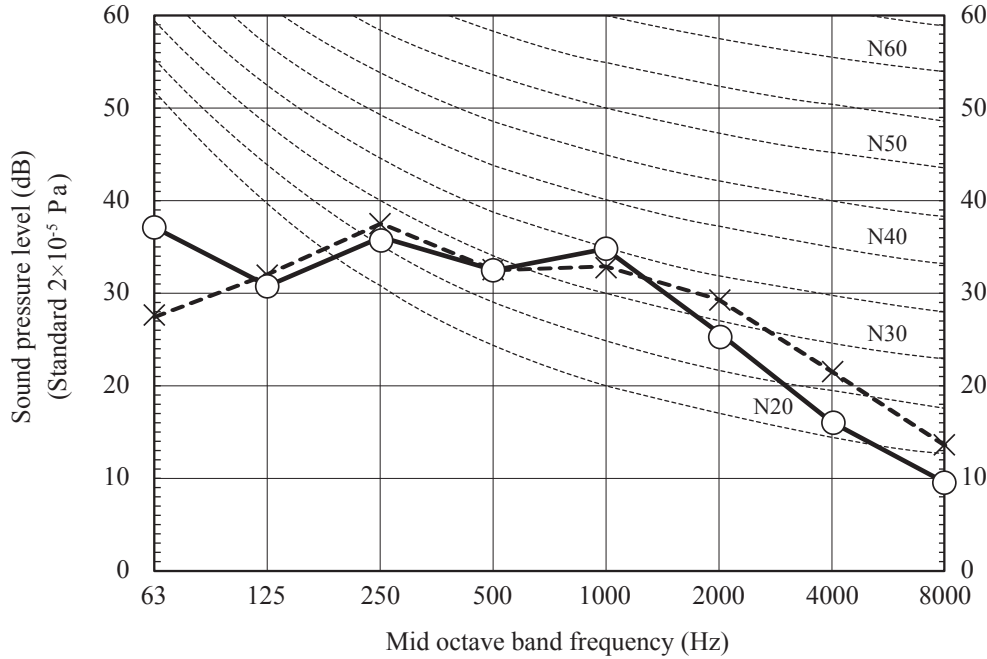
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Me |
|------|----|

●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



(Indoor unit)

| | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| Noise Level | Cooling | 25 dB(A) |
| | Heating | 30 dB(A) |

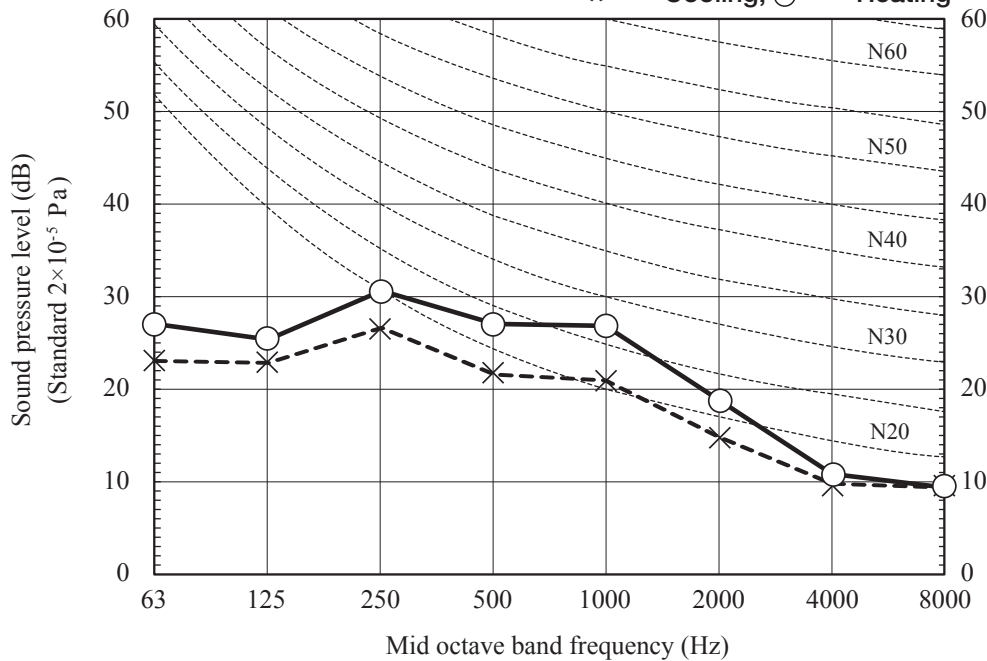
| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Condition | ISO15042 T1/H1 |
|-----------|----------------|

| | |
|------|----|
| MODE | Lo |
|------|----|


●Mike position



x Cooling, ○ — Heating



2.5 Application data

RLF012A105 





(1) Wall mounted type (SRK-ZS series)

(a) Models SRK20, 25, 35ZS-W, -WB, -WT

Model SRK20, 25, 35, 50ZS
R32/R410A REFRIGERANT USED

- This installation manual deals with an indoor unit installation only. For an outdoor unit installation, refer to page 13.
- This unit is designed for R32 or R410A. See a label on the outdoor unit to check refrigerant information.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Before installation, read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully and strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
 - The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels.  **WARNING** and  **CAUTION**.
 -  **WARNING** Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in serious consequences such as death or severe injury.
 -  **CAUTION** Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in personal injury or property damage.
- Both mention the important items to protect your health and safety. Therefore, strictly follow them by any means.










WARNING

- **Be sure to use only for residential purpose.**
If this unit is installed in inferior environment such as machine shop, vehicle (like ship), warehouse, etc., it can malfunction.
- **Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer completely in accordance with the installation manual.**
Installation by non qualified person or incorrect installation can cause serious troubles such as water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Be sure to wear protective goggles and gloves while performing installation work.**
Improper safety measures can result in personal injury.
- **Use the original accessories and the specified components for the installation.**
Using parts other than those prescribed may cause water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of flammable gases can occur.**
If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire resulting in property damage and personal injury.
- **When installing the unit in small rooms, make sure that refrigerant density does not exceed the limit (Reference: ISO5149) in the event of leakage.**
If refrigerant density exceeds the limit, consult the dealer and install the ventilation system. Otherwise lack of oxygen can occur resulting in serious accident.
- **Install the unit in a location where unit will remain stable, horizontal and free of any vibration transmission.**
Unsuitable installation location can cause the unit to fall resulting in material damage and personal injury.
- **Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections.**
Touching rotating equipments, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shock.
- **This unit is designed specifically for R32 or R410A.**
Using any other refrigerant can cause unit failure and personal injury.
- **Do not vent R32 or R410A into atmosphere.**
R32 is a fluorinated greenhouse gas with a Global Warming Potential(GWP)=675.
R410A is a fluorinated greenhouse gas with a Global Warming Potential(GWP)=2088.
- **Make sure that no air enters the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.**
If air enters the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit will become too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R32 or R410A.**
Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause refrigerant circuit burst resulting in unit failure and personal injury.
- **Be sure to connect both liquid and gas connecting pipes properly before operating the compressor.**
Do not open the liquid and gas service valves before completing piping work, and evacuation.
If the compressor is operated when connecting pipes are not connected and service valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the flare nuts to specified torque using the torque wrench.**
Tightening flare nuts with excess torque can cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **During pump down work, be sure to stop the compressor before closing service valves and removing connecting pipes.**
If the connecting pipes are removed when the compressor is in operation and service valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **In the event of refrigerant leakage during installation, be sure to ventilate the working area properly.**
If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gases will be produced.
- **Electrical work must be carried out by the qualified electrician, strictly in accordance with national or regional electricity regulations.**
Incorrect installation can cause electric shock, fire or personal injury.
- **Make sure that earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker of appropriate capacities are installed.**
Circuit breaker should be able to disconnect all poles under over current. Absence of appropriate breakers can cause electric shock, personal injury or property damage.
- **Be sure to switch off the power source in the event of installation, maintenance or service.**
If the power source is not switched off, there is a risk of electric shock, unit failure or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables properly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.**
Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Do not process, splice or modify the power cable, or share the socket with other power plugs.**
Improper power cable or power plug can cause fire or electric shock due to poor connection, insufficient insulation or over-current.
- **Do not perform any change in protective device or its setup condition yourself.**
Changing protective device specifications can cause electric shock, fire or burst.
- **Be sure to clamp the cables properly so that they do not touch any internal component of the unit.**
If cables touch any internal component, it can cause overheating and fire.
- **Be sure to install service cover properly.**
Improper installation can cause electric shock or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed power and connecting cables for electrical work.**
Using improper cables can cause electric leak or fire.
- **This appliance must be connected to main power source by means of a circuit breaker or switch with a contact separation of at least 3mm.**
Improper electrical work can cause unit failure or personal injury.
- **When plugging this unit, a plug conforming to the standard IEC60884-1 must be used.**
Using improper plug can cause electric shock or fire.
- **Be sure to connect the power source cable with power source properly.**
Improper connection can cause intrusion of dust or water resulting in electric shock or fire.

CAUTION

- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
If the unit weight is more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons.
Do not carry the unit by the plastic straps. Always use the carry handle.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
Insects and small animals can enter the electrical parts and cause damage resulting in fire or personal injury. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **If the outdoor unit is installed at height, make sure that there is enough space for installation, maintenance and service.**
Insufficient space can result in personal injury due to falling from the height.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where neighbours are bothered by noise or air generating from the unit.**
It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim.
- **Do not install in the locations where unit is directly exposed to corrosive gases (like sulphide gas, chloride gas), sea breeze or salty atmosphere.**
It can cause corrosion of heat exchanger and damage to plastic parts.
- **Do not install the unit close to the equipments that generate electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves.**
Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipments and telecommunication equipments can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns.
The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the unit in the locations where:**
 - There are heat sources nearby.
 - Unit is directly exposed to rain or sunlight.
 - There is any obstacle which can prevent smooth air circulation from inlet and outlet side of the unit.
 - Unit is directly exposed to oil mist and steam such as kitchen.
 - Chemical substances like ammonia (organic fertilizer), calcium chloride (snow melting agent) and acid (sulfurous acid etc.), which can harm the unit, will generate or accumulate.
 - Drain water can not be discharged properly.
 - TV set or radio receiver is placed within 1m.
 - Height above sea level is more than 1000m.
 It can cause performance degradation, corrosion and damage of components, unit malfunction and fire.
- **Dispose of all packing materials properly.**
Packing materials contain nails and wood which can cause personal injury.
Keep the polybag away from children to avoid the risk of suffocation.
- **Do not put anything on the outdoor unit.**
Object may fall causing property damage or personal injury.
- **Do not touch the aluminum fin of the outdoor unit.**
Aluminum fin temperature is high during heating operation. Touching fin can cause burn.
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipe with your hands when the system is in operation.**
During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending on the operating condition. Touching pipes can cause personal injury like burn (hot/cold).
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power source wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
The isolator should be locked in OFF state in accordance with EN60204-1.

1. ACCESSORIES AND TOOLS

| Standard accessories (supplied with indoor unit) | | | Locally procured parts | | | Tools for installation Work | |
|--|--|----------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|---|--|
| (1) Installation board  1 pc. | (6) Batteries [R03 (AAA, Micro) 1.5V]  2 pcs. | (a) Sleeve (1 pc.) | (b) Sealing plate (1 pc.) | (c) Inclination plate (1 pc.) | (d) Putty | Plus headed driver | Hole core drill (65mm in diameter) |
| (2) Wireless remote control  1 pc. | (7) Air-cleaning filters  2 pcs. | (e) Connecting cable | (f) Drain hose (extension hose) | (g) Piping cover (for insulation of connection piping) | (h) Clamp and screw (for finishing work) | Knife | Wrench key (Hexagon) [4mm] |
| (3) Remote control holder  1 pc. | (8) Filter holders  2 pcs. | (i) Electrical tape | | | | Saw | Flaring tool set* |
| (4) Tapping screws (for installation board Φ4 X 25mm)  5 pcs. | (9) Insulation (#486 50 X 100 13)  1 pc. | | | | | Tape measure | Gas leak detector* |
| (5) Wood screws (for remote control holder Φ3.5 X 16mm)  2 pcs. | | | | | | Torque wrench (14.0-62.0N·m (1.4-6.2kgf·m)) | Pipe bender |
| | | | | | | Plier | Gauge for projection adjustment (Used when flare is made by using conventional flare tool) |
| | | | | | | Pipe cutter | |

* Designed specifically for R32 or R410A

2. SELECTING INSTALLATION LOCATION

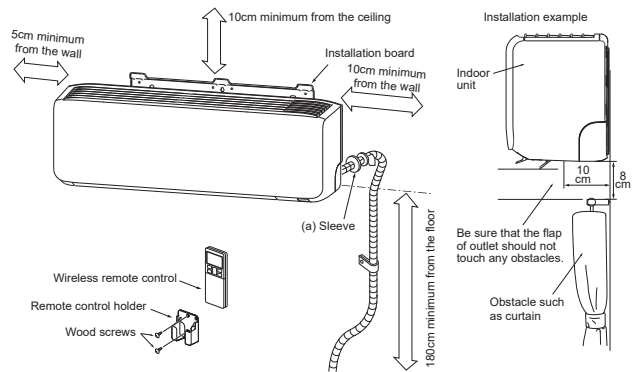
After getting customer's approval, select installation location according to following guidelines.

1. Indoor unit

- Where there is no obstruction to the airflow and where the cooled and heated air can be evenly distributed.
- A solid place where the unit or the wall will not vibrate.
- A place where there will be enough space for servicing. (Where space mentioned on the right side can be secured.)
- Where it is easy to conduct wiring and piping work.
- A place where unit is not directly exposed to sunlight or street light.
- A place where it can be easily drained.
- A place separated at least 1m away from the television or the radio. (To prevent interference to images and sounds.)
- A place where this unit is not affected by the high frequency equipment or electric equipment.
- Avoid installing this unit in place where there is much oil mist.
- A place where there is no electric equipment or household.
- Install the indoor unit on the wall where the height from the floor to the bottom of the unit is more than 180 cm.

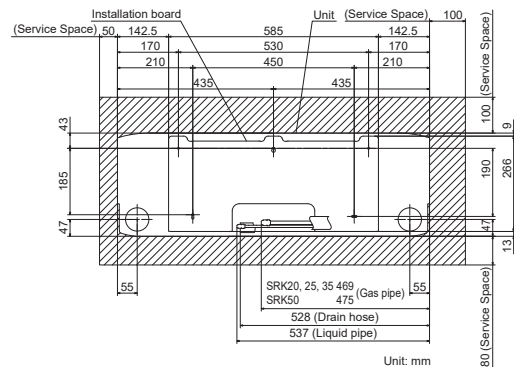
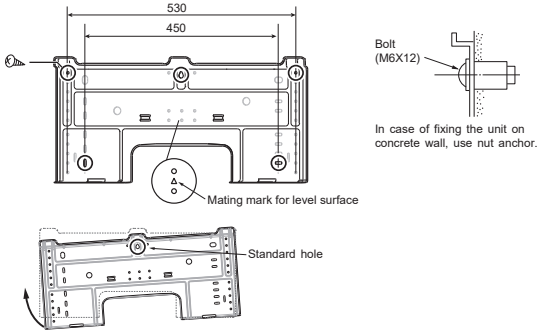
2. Remote control

- A place where the air-conditioner can receive the signal surely during operating the remote control.
- A place where it is not affected by the TV, radio etc.
- Do not place where it is exposed to direct sunlight or near heat devices such as a stove.



3. INSTALLING INSTALLATION BOARD

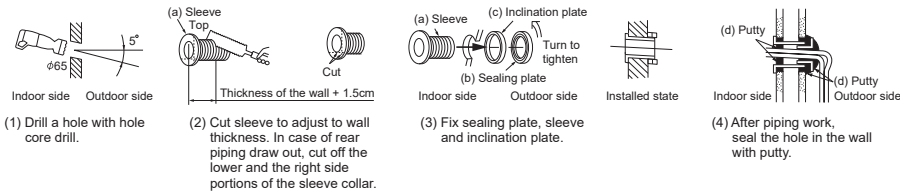
- Installation board should be installed on the wall which can support the weight of the indoor unit.
- Adjustment of the installation board in the horizontal direction is to be conducted with five screws in a temporary tightened state.
- With the standard hole as a center, adjust the board and level it.



CAUTION
Improper adjustment of the installation board can cause water leakage.

4. DRILLING HOLE AND FIXTURE OF SLEEVE

When drilling the wall that contains a metal lath, wire lath or metal plate, be sure to use sealing plate, sleeve and inclination plate (Locally procured parts).



WARNING
Completely seal the hole in the wall with putty. If not sealed properly, dust, insects, small animals, and highly humid air may enter the room from outside, which could result in fire or other hazards.

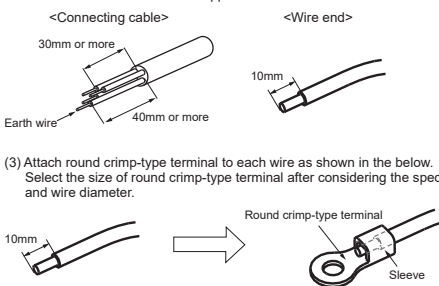
CAUTION
Completely seal the hole in the wall with putty. If not sealed properly, furniture and other fixtures may be damaged by water leakage or condensation.

5. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK

- Before installation, make sure that the power source complies with the air-conditioner's power specification.
- Carry out electrical wiring work according to following guidelines.

1. Preparing cable

- (1) Selecting cable
Select the connecting cable in accordance with the specifications mentioned below.
4 cores * 1.5mm² conformed with 60245 IEC57
* 1 Earth wire is included (Yellow/Green).
- (2) Arrange each wire length as shown below.
Make sure that each wire is stripped 10mm from the end.



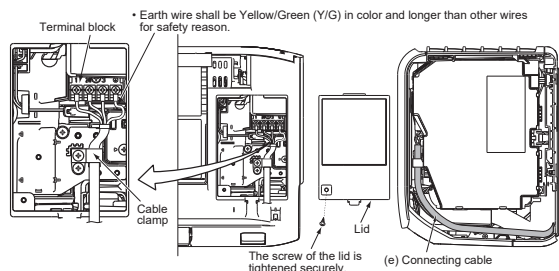
- (3) Attach round crimp-type terminal to each wire as shown in the below.
Select the size of round crimp-type terminal after considering the specifications of terminal block and wire diameter.

2. Connecting cable

- (1) Open the air inlet panel.
- (2) Remove the lid.
- (3) Remove the cable clamp.
- (4) Connect the connecting wires to the terminal block.
- (5) Fix the connecting cable by cable clamp.
- (6) Fix the lid.
- (7) Close the air inlet panel.

NOTE

Take care not to confuse the terminal numbers for indoor and outdoor connections.



WARNING
Incorrect wiring connection can cause malfunction or fire.

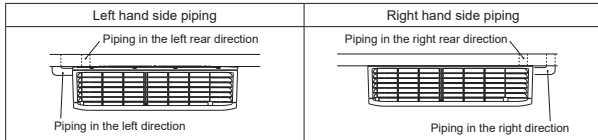
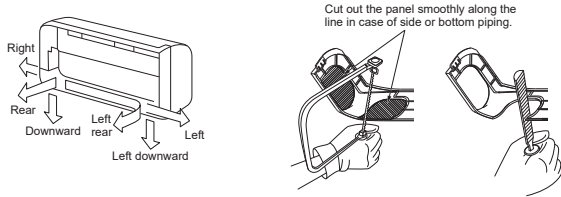
6. FORMING PIPING AND DRAIN HOSE

1. Forming piping

Piping is possible in the right, rear, downward, left, left rear or left downward direction.

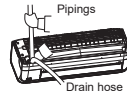
NOTE

Sufficient care must be taken not to damage the panels when connecting pipes.



Forming of pipings.

- Hold the bottom of the piping and fix direction before stretching it and shaping it.



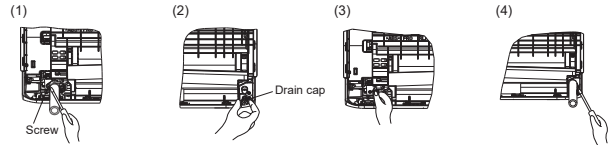
Taping of the exterior

- Tape only the portion that goes through the wall.
- Always tape the wiring with the piping.



2. Drain change procedures

- Remove the screw and drain hose.
- Remove the drain cap by hand or pliers.
- Insert the drain cap which was removed at procedure (2) securely using a hexagonal wrench etc.
- Install the drain hose and screw securely.



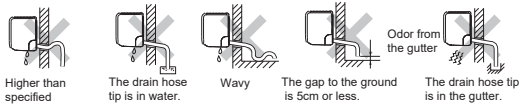
CAUTION

Incorrect installation of drain hose and cap can cause water leakage.

7. DRAINAGE WORK

- Arrange the drain hose in a downward angle.
- Avoid the following drain piping.

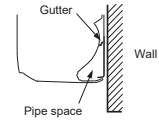
- Pour water to the drain pan located under the heat exchanger, and ensure that the water is discharged outdoor.
- When extended drain hose is present inside the room, insulate it securely with heat insulator available in the market.



Since this air-conditioner is designed to collect dew drops on the rear surface to the drain pan, do not install the connecting wire above the gutter.

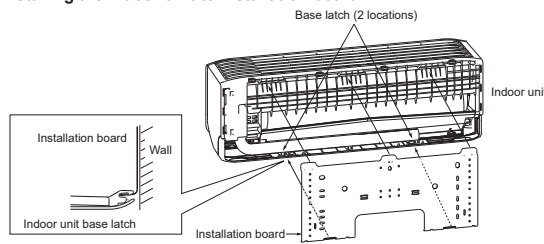
CAUTION

Incorrect drainage work can cause water leakage.



8. INSTALLING INDOOR UNIT

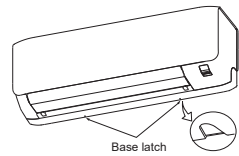
Installing the indoor unit to installation board



- Pass the pipe through the hole in the wall, and hook the upper part of the indoor unit to the installation board.
- Gently push the lower part to fix the indoor unit base lower latch to installation board.

Removing the indoor unit from installation board

- Push up at the marked portion of the indoor unit base latch, and slightly pull it toward you (both right and left hand sides). (The indoor unit base latch can be removed from the installation board.)
- Push up the indoor unit upward so that it can be removed from installation board.



9. CONNECTING PIPING WORK

1. Preparation of connecting pipe

1.1. Selecting connecting pipe

Select connecting pipe according to the following table.

| | Model SRK20/25/35 | Model SRK50 |
|-------------|-------------------|-------------|
| Gas pipe | φ 9.52 | φ 12.7 |
| Liquid pipe | φ 6.35 | φ 6.35 |

- Pipe wall thickness must be greater than or equal to 0.8mm.
- Pipe material must be O-type (Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe ICS 23.040.15, ICS 77.150.30).

1.2. Cutting connecting pipe

- Cut the connecting pipe to the required length with pipe cutter.
- Hold the pipe downward and remove the burrs. Make sure that no foreign material enters the pipe.
- Cover the connecting pipe ends with the tape.

2. Piping work

2.1. Flaring pipe

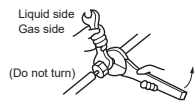
- Take out flare nuts from the service valves of indoor unit and engage them onto connecting pipes.
- Flare the pipes according to table and figure shown below.
Flare dimensions for R32 are different from those for conventional refrigerant.
Although it is recommended to use the flaring tools designed specifically for R32 or R410A, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the dimension B with a flare adjustment gauge.

| Copper pipe outer diameter | A | B [Rigid (clutch) type] | |
|----------------------------|------|-------------------------|--------------|
| | | R32 or R410A | Conventional |
| φ 6.35 | 9.1 | 0-0.5 | 1.0-1.5 |
| φ 9.52 | 13.2 | | |
| φ 12.7 | 16.6 | | |

2.2 Connecting pipes

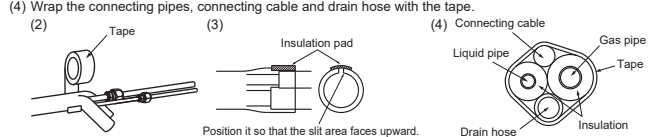
- Connect pipes on both liquid and gas sides.
- Tighten nuts to specified torque shown in the table below.

| Service valve size (mm) | Tightening torque (N·m) |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| φ 6.35 (1/4") | 14-18 |
| φ 9.52 (3/8") | 34-42 |
| φ 12.7 (1/2") | 49-61 |



3. Heating and condensation prevention

- Dress the connecting pipes (both liquid and gas pipes) with insulation to prevent it from heating and dew condensation.
Use the heat insulating material which can withstand 120°C or higher temperature. Make sure that insulation is wrapped tightly around the pipes and no gap is left between them.
- Wrap the refrigerant pipings of indoor unit with indoor unit heat insulation using tape.
- Cover the flare-connected joints (indoor side) with the indoor unit heat insulation and wrap it with an insulation pad (standard accessory provided with indoor unit).
- Wrap the connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose with the tape.



NOTE

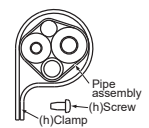
Locations where relative humidity exceeds 70%, both liquid and gas pipes need to be dressed with 20mm or thicker heat insulation materials.

CAUTION

- Improper insulation can cause condensate(water) formation during cooling operation. Condensate can leak or drip causing damage to household property.
- Poor heat insulating capacity can cause pipe outer surface to reach high temperature during heating operation. It can cause cable deterioration and personal injury.

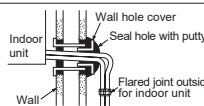
4. Finishing work

- Make sure that the exterior portion of connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose is wrapped properly with tape. Shape the connecting pipes to match with the contours of the pipe assembly route.
- Fix the pipe assembly with the wall using clamps and screws. Pipe assembly should be anchored every 1.5m or less to isolate the vibration.
- Install the service cover securely. Water may enter the unit if service cover is not installed properly, resulting in unit malfunction and failure.



WARNING (only for R32)

- To avoid the risk of fire or explosion, the flared connection must/shall be installed outdoors.
- Reusable mechanical connectors and flared joints are not allowed indoors.



CAUTION

Make sure that the connecting pipes do not touch the components within the unit. If pipes touch the internal components, it may generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

10. HOW TO OPEN, CLOSE, REMOVE AND INSTALL THE AIR INLET PANEL

1. Open
Pull the air inlet panel at both ends of lower part and release latches, then pull up the panel until you feel resistance.
(The panel stops at approx. 70° open position)

2. Close
Hold the panel at both ends of lower part, lower it downward slowly, then push it slightly until the latch works.

3. Removing
Open the panel by 90° (as shown in the right illustration) and then pull it forward.

4. Installing
Insert the panel arm into the slot on the front panel from the position shown in right illustration, hold the panel at both ends of lower part, lower it downward slowly, then push it slightly until the latch works.

11. HOW TO REMOVE AND INSTALL THE BOTTOM AND FRONT PANEL

1. Bottom panel

1.1. Removing
(1) Remove the 2 screws (in the cap).
(2) Remove the 2 hooks of left and right side and then bottom panel can be removed.

1.2. Installing
(1) Install the 2 hooks of left and right side.
(2) Secure the bottom panel with the 2 screws (in the cap).

2. Front panel

2.1. Removing
(1) Remove the air inlet panel, the air filters and the bottom panel.
(2) Remove the 2 screws.
(3) Remove the 4 upper latches and then front panel can be removed.

2.2. Installing
(1) Cover the unit with the front panel and fix 4 upper latches.
(2) Secure the front panel with the 2 screws.
(3) Install the bottom panel, the air inlet panel and the air filters.

12. INSTALLING WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROL

Mount the batteries
(1) Slide and take out the cover of backside.
(2) Mount the batteries [R03 (AAA, Micro), ×2 pieces] in the body properly.
(Fit the poles with the indication marks + & -)
(3) Set the cover again.

Installing remote control holder
(1) Select the place where the unit can receive signals.
(2) Fix the holder to pillar or wall with wood screws.

NOTE
• Do not use new and old batteries together.
• In case the unit is not operated for a long time, take out the batteries

13. TERMINAL CONNECTION FOR AN INTERFACE

To install wired remote control, superlink etc., interface kit is needed.

(1) Remove the air inlet panel, bottom panel and front panel.
(2) Remove the control cover. (Remove the screw.)
(3) There is a terminal (respectively marked with CNS) for the indoor control board. While connecting an interface, connect to the respective terminal securely with the connection harness supplied with an optional "Interface connection kit SC-BIKN2-E" and fasten the connection harness onto the indoor control box with the clamp and screw supplied with the kit.
For more details, refer to the user's manual of "Interface connection kit SC-BIKN2-E".

14. INSTALLING TWO AIR-CONDITIONERS IN THE SAME ROOM

In case two air-conditioners are installed in the same room, apply this setting so that one unit can be operated with only one wireless remote control.

Setting one wireless remote control
(1) Slide and take out the cover and batteries.
(2) Cut the switching line next to the battery with wire cutters.
(3) Set the batteries and cover again.

Setting one indoor unit
(1) Turn off the power source and turn it on after 1 minute.
(2) Send the signal by pressing the ACL switch on the remote control that was set according to the procedure described on the left side.
(3) Check that the reception buzzer sound "Peep" is emitted from the indoor unit. Since the signal is sent about 6 seconds after the ACL switch is pressed, point the remote control to the indoor unit for a while.

NOTE
If no reception buzzer is emitted, restart the setting from the beginning.

15. PUMP DOWN WORK

For the environmental protection, be sure to pump down when relocating or disposing of the unit. Pump down is the method of recovering refrigerant from the indoor unit to the outdoor unit before the connecting pipes are removed from the unit. When pump down is carried out, forced cooling operation is needed.

Forced cooling operation
(1) Turn off the power source and turn it on again after 1 minute.
(2) Press the ON/OFF button continuously for at least 5 seconds. Then operation will start.

For the detail of pump down, refer to the installation manual of outdoor unit.

16. INSTALLATION CHECK AND TEST RUN

After finishing the installation work, check the following points again before turning on the power. Conduct a test run and ensure that the unit operates properly. At the same time, explain to the customer how to use the unit and how to take care of the unit following the user's manual.

Before test run
Before test run, check following points.

| | |
|--|--|
| Power source voltage complies with the rated voltage of air-conditioner. | |
| Earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker are installed. | |
| Power cable and connecting cable are securely fixed to the terminal block. | |
| Both liquid and gas service valves are fully open. | |
| No gas leaks from the joints of the service valves. | |
| Indoor and outdoor side pipe joints have been insulated. | |
| Hole on the wall is completely sealed with putty. | |
| Drain hose and cap are installed properly. | |
| Screw of the lid is tightened securely. | |

Test run
Check following points during test run.

| | |
|--|--|
| Indoor unit receives signal of remote control. | |
| Air-conditioning operation is normal. | |
| There is no abnormal noise. | |
| Water drains out smoothly. | |
| Display of remote control is normal. | |

After test run

| | |
|---|--|
| Explain the operating and maintenance methods to the user according to the user's manual. | |
| Keep this installation manual together with user's manual. | |

NOTE
During restart or change in operation mode, the unit will not start operating for approximately 3 minutes. This is to protect the unit and it is not malfunction.

(b) Models SRK15, 20, 25, 35ZS-WF, -WFB, -WFT

RLF012A111

**Model SRK15,20,25,35,50ZS-WF
R32/R410A REFRIGERANT USED**

- This installation manual deals with an indoor unit installation only. For an outdoor unit installation, refer to page 13.
- This unit is designed for R32 or R410A. See a label on the outdoor unit to check refrigerant information.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Before installation, read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully and strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, **⚠ WARNING** and **⚡ CAUTION**.
 - ⚠ WARNING** Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in serious consequences such as death or severe injury.
 - ⚡ CAUTION** Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in personal injury or property damage.
- Both mention the important items to protect your health and safety. Therefore, strictly follow them by any means.
- Be sure to confirm no operation problem on the equipment after completing the installation. If unusual noise can be heard during the test run, consult the dealer.
- Be sure to explain the operating methods as well as the maintenance methods of this equipment to the user according to the user's manual.
- Be sure to keep the installation manual together with user's manual at a place where it is easily accessible to the user any time. Moreover, ask the user to hand the manuals to a new user, whenever required.










⚠ WARNING

- **Be sure to use only for residential purpose.**
If this unit is installed in inferior environment such as machine shop, vehicle (like ship), warehouse, etc., it can malfunction.
- **Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer completely in accordance with the installation manual.**
Installation by an unqualified person or incorrect installation can cause serious troubles such as water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Be sure to wear protective goggles and gloves while performing installation work.**
Improper safety measures can result in personal injury.
- **Use the original accessories and the specified components for the installation.**
Using parts other than those prescribed may cause water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of flammable gases can occur.**
If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire resulting in property damage and personal injury.
- **When installing the unit in small rooms, make sure that refrigerant density does not exceed the limit (Reference: ISO5149) in the event of leakage.**
If refrigerant density exceeds the limit, consult the dealer and install the ventilation system. Otherwise lack of oxygen can occur resulting in serious accident.
- **Install the unit in a location where unit will remain stable, horizontal and free of any vibration transmission.**
Unsuitable installation location can cause the unit to fall resulting in material damage and personal injury.
- **Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections.**
Touching rotating equipment, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shock.
- **This unit is designed specifically for R32 or R410A.**
Using any other refrigerant can cause unit failure and personal injury.
- **Do not vent R32 or R410A into atmosphere.**
R32 is a fluorinated greenhouse gas with a Global Warming Potential (GWP) = 675. R410A is a fluorinated greenhouse gas with a Global Warming Potential (GWP) = 2088.
- **Make sure that no air enters the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.**
If air enters the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit will become too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R32 or R410A.**
Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause refrigerant circuit burst resulting in unit failure and personal injury.
- **Be sure to connect both liquid and gas connecting pipes properly before operating the compressor.**
Do not open the liquid and gas service valves before completing piping work, and evacuation.
If the compressor is operated when connecting pipes are not connected and service valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the flare nuts to specified torque using the torque wrench.**
Tightening flare nuts with excess torque can cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **During pump down work, be sure to stop the compressor before closing service valves and removing connecting pipes.**
If the connecting pipes are removed when the compressor is in operation and service valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **In the event of refrigerant leakage during installation, be sure to ventilate the working area properly.**
If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gases will be produced.
- **Electrical work must be carried out by the qualified electrician, strictly in accordance with national or regional electricity regulations.**
Incorrect installation can cause electric shock, fire or personal injury.
- **Make sure that earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker of appropriate capacities are installed.**
Circuit breaker should be able to disconnect all poles under over current. Absence of appropriate breakers can cause electric shock, personal injury or property damage.
- **Be sure to switch off the power source in the event of installation, maintenance or service.**
If the power source is not switched off, there is a risk of electric shock, unit failure or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables properly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.**
Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Do not process, splice or modify the power cable, or share the socket with other power plugs.**
Improper power cable or power plug can cause fire or electric shock due to poor connection, insufficient insulation or over-current.
- **Do not perform any change in protective device or its setup condition yourself.**
Changing protective device specifications can cause electric shock, fire or burst.
- **Be sure to clamp the cables properly so that they do not touch any internal component of the unit.**
If cables touch any internal component, it can cause overheating and fire.
- **Be sure to install service cover properly.**
Improper installation can cause electric shock or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed power and connecting cables for electrical work.**
Using improper cables can cause electric leak or fire.
- **This appliance must be connected to main power source by means of a circuit breaker or switch with a contact separation of at least 3mm.**
Improper electrical work can cause unit failure or personal injury.
- **Be sure to connect the power source cable with power source properly.**
Improper connection can cause intrusion of dust or water resulting in electric shock or fire.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication near automatic control equipment such as an automatic door or fire-alarm device.**
It may cause an accident due to malfunction of equipment.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication in a hospital, etc. where the use of wireless devices is prohibited.**
It may cause malfunction of medical equipment due to a wireless device.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication near a person with a cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.**
It may cause malfunction of a medical device.

⚡ CAUTION

- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
If the unit weight is more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons. Do not carry the unit by the plastic straps. Always use the carry handle.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
Insects and small animals can enter the electrical parts and cause damage resulting in fire or personal injury. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **If the outdoor unit is installed at height, make sure that there is enough space for installation, maintenance and service.**
Insufficient space can result in personal injury due to falling from the height.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where neighbours are bothered by noise or air generating from the unit.**
It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim.
- **Do not install in the locations where unit is directly exposed to corrosive gases (like sulphide gas, chloride gas), sea breeze or salty atmosphere.**
It can cause corrosion of heat exchanger and damage to plastic parts.
- **Do not install the unit close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves.**
Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipment and telecommunication equipment can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not turn ON the wireless LAN communication near another wireless device, microwave, cordless phone, fax machine, etc.**
It may cause malfunction of wireless device.
- **Do not install the unit in the locations where:**
 - There are heat sources nearby.
 - Unit is directly exposed to rain or sunlight.
 - There is any obstacle which can prevent smooth air circulation from inlet and outlet side of the unit.
 - Unit is directly exposed to oil mist and steam such as kitchen.
 - Chemical substances like ammonia (organic fertilizer), calcium chloride (snow melting agent) and acid (sulfurous acid etc.), which can harm the unit, will generate or accumulate.
 - Drain water cannot be discharged properly.
 - TV set or radio receiver is placed within 1m.
 - Height above sea level is more than 1000m.
- It can cause performance degradation, corrosion and damage of components, unit malfunction and fire.
- **Dispose of all packing materials properly.**
Packing materials contain nails and wood which can cause personal injury. Keep the polybag away from children to avoid the risk of suffocation.
- **Do not put anything on the outdoor unit.**
Object may fall causing property damage or personal injury.
- **Do not touch the aluminum fin of the outdoor unit.**
Aluminum fin temperature is high during heating operation. Touching fin can cause burn.
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipe with your hands when the system is in operation.**
During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending on the operating condition. Touching pipes can cause personal injury like burn (hot/cold).
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power source wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
The isolator should be locked in OFF state in accordance with EN60204-1.

1. ACCESSORIES AND TOOLS

| Standard accessories (supplied with indoor unit) | | Locally procured parts | | Tools for installation Work | |
|--|---|--|--|--|------------------------------------|
| (1) Installation board  1 pc. | (6) Batteries [R03 (AAA, Micro) 1.5 V]  2 pcs. | (a) Sleeve (1 pc.) | (b) Sealing plate (1 pc.) | (a) Phillips headed driver | Pipe cutter |
| (2) Wireless remote control  1 pc. | (7) Air-cleaning filters  2 pcs. | (c) Inclination plate (1 pc.) | (d) Putty | Knife | Hole core drill (65mm in diameter) |
| (3) Remote control holder  1 pc. | (8) Filter holders  2 pcs. | (e) Connecting cable | (f) Drain hose (extension hose) | Saw | Wrench key (Hexagon) [4mm] |
| (4) Tapping screws (for installation board φ4 X 25mm)  5 pcs. | (9) Insulation (#486 50 X 100 t3)  1 pc. | (g) Piping cover (for insulation of connection piping) | (h) Clamp and screw (for finishing work) | Tape measure | Flaring tool set* |
| (5) Wood screws (for remote control holder φ3.5 X 16mm)  2 pcs. | | (i) Electrical tape | | Torque wrench (14.0-62.0 N·m (1.4-6.2kgf·m)) | Gas leak detector* |
| | | | | Plier | Pipe bender |
| | | | | | Flare adjustment gauge |

* Designed specifically for R32 or R410A

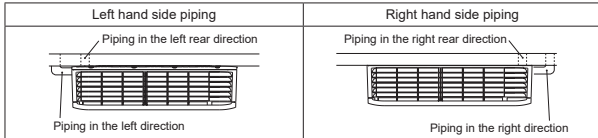
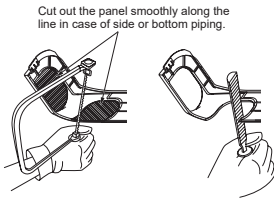
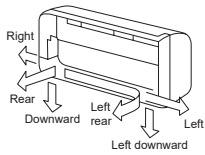
6. FORMING PIPING AND DRAIN HOSE

1. Forming piping

Piping is possible in the right, rear, downward, left, left rear or left downward direction.

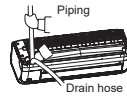
NOTE

Sufficient care must be taken not to damage the panels when connecting pipes.



Forming of piping.

- Hold the bottom of the piping and fix direction before stretching it and shaping it.



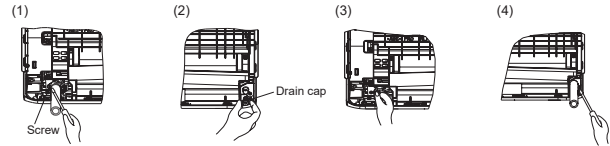
Taping of the exterior

- Tape only the portion that goes through the wall.
- Always tape the wiring with the piping.



2. Drain change procedures

- (1) Remove the screw and drain hose.
- (2) Remove the drain cap by hand or pliers.
- (3) Insert the drain cap which was removed at procedure (2) securely using a hexagonal wrench etc.
- (4) Install the drain hose and screw securely.

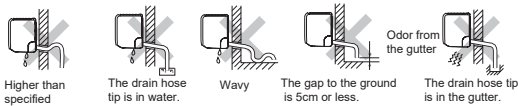


CAUTION

Incorrect installation of drain hose and cap can cause water leakage.

7. DRAINAGE WORK

- Arrange the drain hose in a downward angle.
- Avoid the following drain piping.

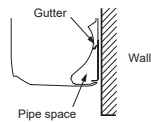


- Pour water to the drain pan located under the heat exchanger, and ensure that the water is discharged outdoor.
- When extended drain hose is present inside the room, insulate it securely with heat insulator available in the market.

Since this air-conditioner is designed to collect dew drops on the rear surface to the drain pan, do not install the connecting wire above the gutter.

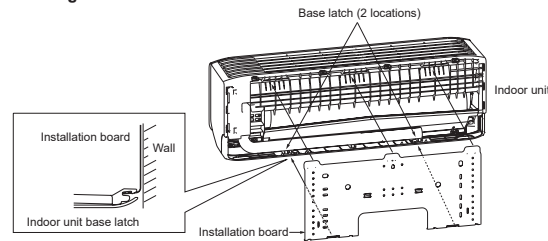
CAUTION

Incorrect drainage work can cause water leakage.



8. INSTALLING INDOOR UNIT

Installing the indoor unit to installation board



- (1) Pass the pipe through the hole in the wall, and hook the upper part of the indoor unit to the installation board.

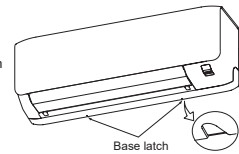


- (2) Gently push the lower part of the indoor unit, base lower latch to installation board.



Removing the indoor unit from installation board

- (1) Push up at the marked portion of the indoor unit base latch, and slightly pull it toward you (both right and left hand sides). (The indoor unit base latch can be removed from the installation board.)
- (2) Push up the indoor unit upward so that it can be removed from installation board.



9. CONNECTING PIPING WORK

1. Preparation of connecting pipe

1.1 Selecting connecting pipe

Select connecting pipe according to the following table.

| | Model SRK15/20/25/35 | Model SRK50 |
|-------------|----------------------|-------------|
| Gas pipe | φ9.52 | φ12.7 |
| Liquid pipe | φ6.35 | φ6.35 |

- Pipe wall thickness must be greater than or equal to 0.8mm.
- Pipe material must be O-type (Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe ICS 23.040.15, ICS 77.150.30).

1.2 Cutting connecting pipe

- (1) Cut the connecting pipe to the required length with pipe cutter.
- (2) Hold the pipe downward and remove the burrs. Make sure that no foreign material enters the pipe.
- (3) Cover the connecting pipe ends with the tape.

2. Piping work

2.1 Flaring pipe

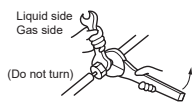
- (1) Take out flare nuts from the service valves of indoor unit and engage them onto connecting pipes.
- (2) Flare the pipes according to table and figure shown below.
Flare dimensions for R32 are different from those for conventional refrigerant. Although it is recommended to use the flaring tools designed specifically for R32 or R410A, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the dimension B with a flare adjustment gauge.

| Copper pipe outer diameter | A | Copper pipe outer diameter | | B [Rigid (clutch) type] |
|----------------------------|------|----------------------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| | | R32 or R410A | Conventional | |
| φ6.35 | 9.1 | φ6.35 | 0-0.5 | 1.0-1.5 |
| φ9.52 | 13.2 | φ9.52 | | |
| φ12.7 | 16.6 | φ12.7 | | |

2.2 Connecting pipes

- (1) Connect pipes on both liquid and gas sides.
- (2) Tighten nuts to specified torque shown in the table below.

| Service valve size (mm) | Tightening torque (N·m) |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| φ6.35 (1/4") | 14-18 |
| φ9.52 (3/8") | 34-42 |
| φ12.7 (1/2") | 49-61 |

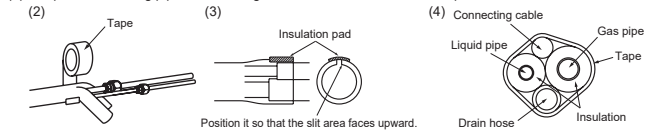


CAUTION

- Do not apply refrigerating machine oil to the flared surface. It can cause refrigerant leakage.
- Do not apply excess torque to the flared nuts. The flared nuts may crack resulting in refrigerant leakage.

3. Heating and condensation prevention

- (1) Dress the connecting pipe (both liquid and gas pipes) with insulation to prevent it from heating and dew condensation. Use the heat insulating material which can withstand 120°C or higher temperature. Make sure that insulation is wrapped tightly around the pipes and no gap is left between them.
- (2) Wrap the refrigerant pipings of indoor unit with indoor unit heat insulation using tape.
- (3) Cover the flare-connected joints (indoor side) with the indoor unit heat insulation and wrap it with an insulation pad (standard accessory provided with indoor unit).
- (4) Wrap the connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose with the tape.



NOTE

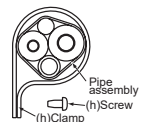
Locations where relative humidity exceeds 70%, both liquid and gas pipes need to be dressed with 20mm or thicker heat insulation materials.

CAUTION

- Improper insulation can cause condensate(water) formation during cooling operation. Condensate can leak or drip causing damage to household property.
- Poor heat insulating capacity can cause pipe outer surface to reach high temperature during heating operation. It can cause cable deterioration and personal injury.

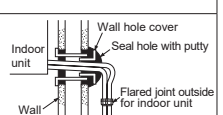
4. Finishing work

- (1) Make sure that the exterior portion of connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose is wrapped properly with tape. Shape the connecting pipes to match with the contours of the pipe assembly route.
- (2) Fix the pipe assembly with the wall using clamps and screws. Pipe assembly should be anchored every 1.5 m or less to isolate the vibration.
- (3) Install the service cover securely. Water may enter the unit if service cover is not installed properly, resulting in unit malfunction and failure.



WARNING (only for R32)

- To avoid the risk of fire or explosion, the flared connection must/shall be installed outdoors.
- Reusable mechanical connectors and flared joints are not allowed indoors.



CAUTION

Make sure that the connecting pipes do not touch the components within the unit. If pipes touch the internal components, it may generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

10. HOW TO OPEN, CLOSE, REMOVE AND INSTALL THE AIR INLET PANEL

1. Open

Pull the air inlet panel at both ends of lower part and release latches, then pull up the panel until you feel resistance. (The panel stops at approx. 70° open position)

2. Close

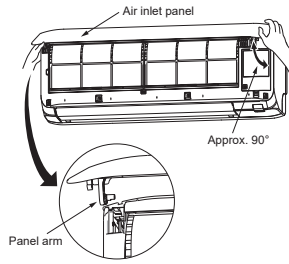
Hold the panel at both ends of lower part, lower it downward slowly, then push it slightly until the latch works.

3. Removing

Open the panel by 90° (as shown in the right illustration) and then pull it forward.

4. Installing

Insert the panel arm into the slot on the front panel from the position shown in right illustration, hold the panel at both ends of lower part, lower it downward slowly, then push it slightly until the latch works.



11. HOW TO REMOVE AND INSTALL THE BOTTOM AND FRONT PANEL

1. Bottom panel

1.1 Removing

- (1) Remove the 2 screws (in the cap).
- (2) Remove the 2 hooks of left and right side and then bottom panel can be removed.

1.2 Installing

- (1) Install the 2 hooks of left and right side.
- (2) Secure the bottom panel with the 2 screws (in the cap).

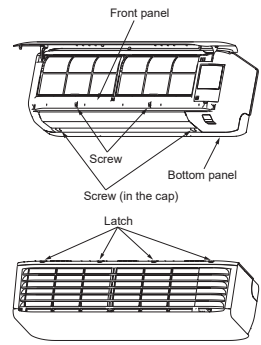
2. Front panel

2.1 Removing

- (1) Remove the air inlet panel, the air filters and the bottom panel.
- (2) Remove the 2 screws.
- (3) Remove the 4 upper latches and then front panel can be removed.

2.2 Installing

- (1) Cover the unit with the front panel and fix 4 upper latches.
- (2) Secure the front panel with the 2 screws.
- (3) Install the bottom panel, the air inlet panel and the air filters.



12. INSTALLING WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROL

Mount the batteries

- (1) Slide and take out the cover of backside.
- (2) Mount the batteries [R03 (AAA, Micro), *2 pieces] in the body properly. (Fit the poles with the indication marks + & -)
- (3) Set the cover again.

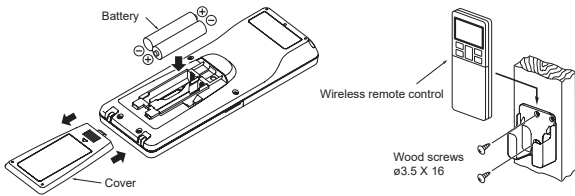
NOTE

- Do not use new and old batteries together.
- In case the unit is not operated for a long time, take out the batteries

Installing remote control holder

- (1) Select the place where the unit can receive signals.
- (2) Fix the holder to pillar or wall with wood screws.

- Do not mix old and new batteries, or batteries of different types (manganese/alkaline).

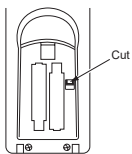


14. INSTALLING TWO AIR-CONDITIONERS IN THE SAME ROOM

In case two air-conditioners are installed in the same room, apply this setting so that one unit can be operated with only one remote control.

Setting one remote control

- (1) Slide and take out the cover and batteries.
- (2) Cut the switching line next to the battery with wire cutters.
- (3) Set the batteries and cover again.

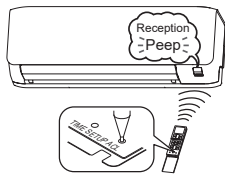


Setting one indoor unit

- (1) Turn off the power source and turn it on after 1 minute.
- (2) Send the signal by pressing the ACL switch on the remote control that was set according to the procedure described on the left side.
- (3) Check that the reception buzzer sound "Peep" is emitted from the indoor unit. Since the signal is sent about 6 seconds after the ACL switch is pressed, point the remote control to the indoor unit for a while.

NOTE

If no reception buzzer is emitted, restart the setting from the beginning.



13. TERMINAL CONNECTION FOR AN INTERFACE

This unit is standardly equipped with a wireless LAN adapter. To install wired remote control, Superlink etc., interface kit is needed. When using the interface kit, the wireless LAN function cannot be used.

- (1) Turn off the power source.
- (2) Remove the air inlet panel, bottom panel and front panel.
- (3) Remove the control cover. (Remove the screw.)

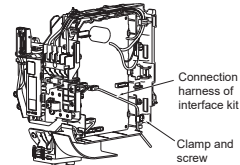
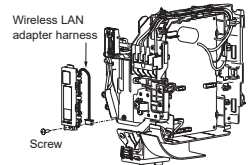
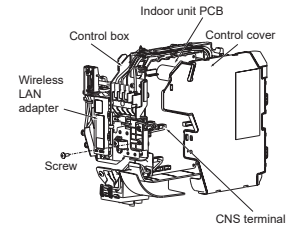
- (4) There is a terminal (respectively marked with CNS) on the indoor unit PCB. Disconnect the harness from the CNS terminal.

Remove the wireless LAN adapter from the control box, and pull out the wireless LAN adapter harness from the wireless LAN adapter.

After that, install the wireless LAN adapter in the control box.

While connecting an interface, connect to the CNS terminal securely with the connection harness supplied with an option "Interface connection kit SC-BIKN2-E" and fasten the connection harness onto the indoor control box with the clamp and screw supplied with the kit.

For more details, refer to the user's manual of "Interface connection kit SC-BIKN2-E".



NOTE

Make sure that the disconnected connector does not touch the internal parts of the unit.

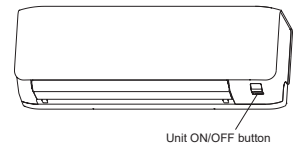
15. PUMP DOWN WORK

For the environmental protection, be sure to pump down when relocating or disposing of the unit. Pump down is the method of recovering refrigerant from the indoor unit to the outdoor unit before the connecting pipes are removed from the unit. When pump down is carried out, forced cooling operation is needed.

Forced cooling operation

- (1) Turn off the power source and turn it on again after 1 minute.
- (2) Press the ON/OFF button continuously for at least 5 seconds. Then operation will start.

For the detail of pump down, refer to the installation manual of outdoor unit.



16. INSTALLATION CHECK AND TEST RUN

After finishing the installation work, check the following points again before turning on the power. Conduct a test run and ensure that the unit operates properly. At the same time, explain to the customer how to use the unit and how to take care of the unit following the user's manual.

Before test run

Before test run, check following points.

| | |
|--|--|
| Power source voltage complies with the rated voltage of air-conditioner. | |
| Earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker are installed. | |
| Power cable and connecting cable are securely fixed to the terminal block. | |
| Both liquid and gas service valves are fully open. | |
| No gas leaks from the joints of the service valves. | |
| Indoor and outdoor side pipe joints have been insulated. | |
| Hole on the wall is completely sealed with putty. | |
| Drain hose and cap are installed properly. | |
| Screw of the lid is tightened securely. | |

Test run

Check following points during test run.

| | |
|--|--|
| Indoor unit receives signal of remote control. | |
| Air-conditioning operation is normal. | |
| There is no abnormal noise. | |
| Water drains out smoothly. | |
| Display of remote control is normal. | |

NOTE

During restart or change in operation mode, the unit will not start operating for approximately 3 minutes. This is to protect the unit and it is not malfunction.

After test run

| | |
|---|--|
| Explain the operating and maintenance methods to the user according to the user's manual. | |
| Keep this installation manual together with user's manual. | |

(2) Wall mounted type (SKM-ZSP series)

Models SKM15, 20, 25, 35ZSP-W

RLC012A106A

Model SKM15,20,25,35ZSP
R32/R410A REFRIGERANT USED

- This installation manual deals with an indoor unit installation only. For an outdoor unit installation, refer to page 13.
- This unit is designed for R32 or R410A. See a label on the outdoor unit to check refrigerant information.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Before installation, read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully and strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
 - The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, **WARNING** and **CAUTION**.
 - WARNING** Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in serious consequences such as death or severe injury.
 - CAUTION** Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in personal injury or property damage.
- Both mention the important items to protect your health and safety. Therefore, strictly follow them by any means.

WARNING

- **Be sure to use only for residential purpose.**
If this unit is installed in inferior environment such as machine shop, vehicle (like ship), warehouse, etc., it can malfunction.
- **Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer completely in accordance with the installation manual.**
Installation by an unqualified person or incorrect installation can cause serious troubles such as water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Be sure to wear protective goggles and gloves while performing installation work.**
Improper safety measures can result in personal injury.
- **Use the original accessories and the specified components for the installation.**
Using parts other than those prescribed may cause water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of flammable gases can occur.**
If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire resulting in property damage and personal injury.
- **When installing the unit in small rooms, make sure that refrigerant density does not exceed the limit (Reference: ISO5149) in the event of leakage.**
If refrigerant density exceeds the limit, consult the dealer and install the ventilation system.
Otherwise lack of oxygen can occur resulting in serious accident.
- **Install the unit in a location where unit will remain stable, horizontal and free of any vibration transmission.**
Unsuitable installation location can cause the unit to fall resulting in material damage and personal injury.
- **Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections.**
Touching rotating equipment, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shock.
- **This unit is designed specifically for R32 or R410A.**
Using any other refrigerant can cause unit failure and personal injury.
- **Do not vent R32 or R410A into atmosphere.**
R32 is a fluorinated greenhouse gas with a Global Warming Potential (GWP) = 675.
R410A is a fluorinated greenhouse gas with a Global Warming Potential (GWP) = 2088.
- **Make sure that no air enters the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.**
If air enters the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit will become too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R32 or R410A.**
Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause refrigerant circuit burst resulting in unit failure and personal injury.
- **Be sure to connect both liquid and gas connecting pipes properly before operating the compressor.**
Do not open the liquid and gas service valves before completing piping work, and evacuation.
If the compressor is operated when connecting pipes are not connected and service valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the flare nuts to specified torque using the torque wrench.**
Tightening flare nuts with excess torque can cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **During pump down work, be sure to stop the compressor before closing service valves and removing connecting pipes.**
If the connecting pipes are removed when the compressor is in operation and service valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **In the event of refrigerant leakage during installation, be sure to ventilate the working area properly.**
If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gases will be produced.
- **Electrical work must be carried out by the qualified electrician, strictly in accordance with national or regional electricity regulations.**
Incorrect installation can cause electric shock, fire or personal injury.
- **Make sure that earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker of appropriate capacities are installed.**
Circuit breaker should be able to disconnect all poles under over current. Absence of appropriate breakers can cause electric shock, personal injury or property damage.
- **Be sure to switch off the power source in the event of installation, maintenance or service.**
If the power source is not switched off, there is a risk of electric shock, unit failure or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables properly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.**
Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Do not process, splice or modify the power cable, or share the socket with other power plugs.**
Improper power cable or power plug can cause fire or electric shock due to poor connection, insufficient insulation or over-current.
- **Do not perform any change in protective device or its setup condition yourself.**
Changing protective device specifications can cause electric shock, fire or burst.
- **Be sure to clamp the cables properly so that they do not touch any internal component of the unit.**
If cables touch any internal component, it can cause overheating and fire.
- **Be sure to install service cover properly.**
Improper installation can cause electric shock or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed power and connecting cables for electrical work.**
Using improper cables can cause electric leak or fire.
- **This appliance must be connected to main power source by means of a circuit breaker or switch with a contact separation of at least 3mm.**
Improper electrical work can cause unit failure or personal injury.
- **Be sure to connect the power source cable with power source properly.**
Improper connection can cause intrusion of dust or water resulting in electric shock or fire.

CAUTION

- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
If the unit weight is more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons.
Do not carry the unit by the plastic straps. Always use the carry handle.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
Insects and small animals can enter the electrical parts and cause damage resulting in fire or personal injury. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **If the outdoor unit is installed at height, make sure that there is enough space for installation, maintenance and service.**
Insufficient space can result in personal injury due to falling from the height.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where neighbours are bothered by noise or air generating from the unit.**
It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim.
- **Do not install in the locations where unit is directly exposed to corrosive gases (like sulphide gas, chloride gas), sea breeze or salty atmosphere.**
It can cause corrosion of heat exchanger and damage to plastic parts.
- **Do not install the unit close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves.**
Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipment and telecommunication equipment can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns.
The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the unit in the locations where:**
 - There are heat sources nearby.
 - Unit is directly exposed to rain or sunlight.
 - There is any obstacle which can prevent smooth air circulation from inlet and outlet side of the unit.
 - Unit is directly exposed to oil mist and steam such as kitchen.
 - Chemical substances like ammonia (organic fertilizer), calcium chloride (snow melting agent) and acid (sulfurous acid etc.), which can harm the unit, will generate or accumulate.
 - Drain water cannot be discharged properly.
 - TV set or radio receiver is placed within 1m.
 - Height above sea level is more than 1000m.
 It can cause performance degradation, corrosion and damage of components, unit malfunction and fire.
- **Dispose of all packing materials properly.**
Packing materials contain nails and wood which can cause personal injury.
Keep the polybag away from children to avoid the risk of suffocation.
- **Do not put anything on the outdoor unit.**
Object may fall causing property damage or personal injury.
- **Do not touch the aluminum fin of the outdoor unit.**
Aluminium fin temperature is high during heating operation. Touching fin can cause burn.
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipe with your hands when the system is in operation.**
During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending on the operating condition. Touching pipes can cause personal injury like burn (hot/cold).
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power source wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
The isolator should be locked in OFF state in accordance with EN60204-1.

1. ACCESSORIES AND TOOLS

| Standard accessories (supplied with indoor unit) | | | |
|--|--|-----------|---|
| (1) Installation board | | 1 pc. (4) | Tapping screws (for installation board φ4 X 25mm) 5 pcs. |
| (2) Wireless remote control | | 1 pc. (5) | Wood screws (for remote control holder φ3.5 X 16mm) 2 pcs. |
| (3) Remote control holder | | 1 pc. (6) | Batteries [R03 (AAA, Micro) 1.5 V] 2 pcs. |

| Locally procured parts | |
|--|--|
| (a) Sleeve (1 pc.) | |
| (b) Sealing plate (1 pc.) | |
| (c) Inclination plate (1 pc.) | |
| (d) Putty | |
| (e) Connecting cable | |
| (f) Drain hose (extension hose) | |
| (g) Piping cover (for insulation of connection piping) | |
| (h) Clamp and screw (for finishing work) | |
| (i) Electrical tape | |

| Tools for installation Work | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Phillips headed driver | Pipe cutter |
| Knife | Hole core drill (65mm in diameter) |
| Saw | Wrench key (Hexagon) [4mm] |
| Tape measure | Flaring tool set* |
| Torque wrench (14.0-62.0 N·m (1.4-6.2kgf·m)) | Gas leak detector* |
| Plier | Pipe bender |
| | Flare adjustment gauge |

* Designed specifically for R32 or R410A

2. SELECTING INSTALLATION LOCATION

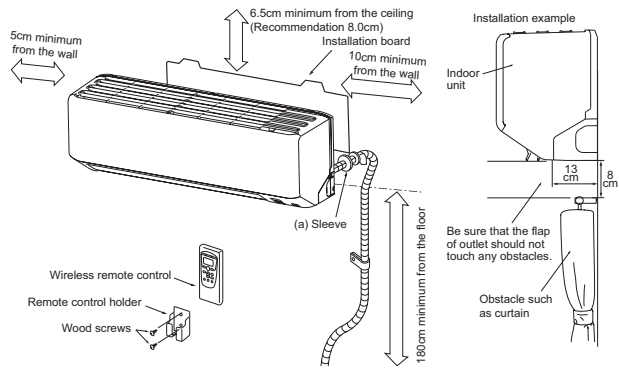
After getting customer's approval, select installation location according to following guidelines.

1. Indoor unit

- Where there is no obstruction to the airflow and where the cooled and heated air can be evenly distributed.
- A solid place where the unit or the wall will not vibrate.
- A place where there will be enough space for servicing. (Where space mentioned on the right side can be secured.)
- Where it is easy to conduct wiring and piping work.
- A place where unit is not directly exposed to sunlight or street light.
- A place where it can be easily drained.
- A place separated at least 1m away from the television or the radio. (To prevent interference to images and sounds.)
- A place where this unit is not affected by the high frequency equipment or electric equipment.
- Avoid installing this unit in place where there is much oil mist.
- A place where there is no electric equipment or household.
- Install the indoor unit on the wall where the height from the floor to the bottom of the unit is more than 180 cm.

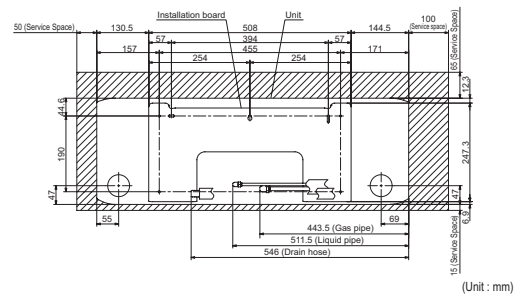
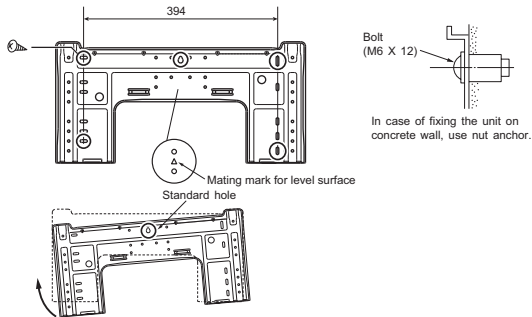
2. Remote control

- A place where the air-conditioner can receive the signal surely during operating the remote control.
- A place where it is not affected by the TV, radio etc.
- Do not place where it is exposed to direct sunlight or near heat devices such as a stove.



3. INSTALLING INSTALLATION BOARD

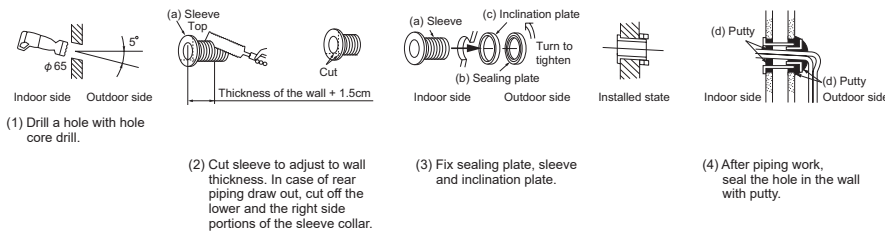
- Installation board should be installed on the wall which can support the weight of the indoor unit.
- Adjustment of the installation board in the horizontal direction is to be conducted with 5 screws in a temporary tightened state.
- With the standard hole as a center, adjust the board and level it.



CAUTION
Improper adjustment of the installation board can cause water leakage.

4. DRILLING HOLE AND FIXTURE OF SLEEVE

When drilling the wall that contains a metal lath, wire lath or metal plate, be sure to use sealing plate, sleeve and inclination plate (Locally procured parts).



WARNING
Completely seal the hole in the wall with putty. If not sealed properly, dust, insects, small animals, and highly humid air may enter the room from outside, which could result in fire or other hazards.

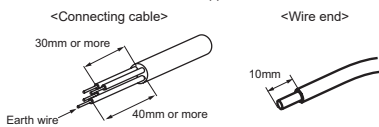
CAUTION
Completely seal the hole in the wall with putty. If not sealed properly, furniture and other fixtures may be damaged by water leakage or condensation.

5. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK

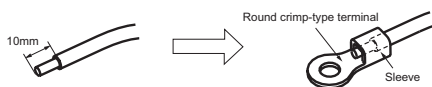
- Before installation, make sure that the power source complies with the air-conditioner's power specification.
- Carry out electrical wiring work according to following guidelines.

1. Preparing cable

- Selecting cable
Select the connecting cable in accordance with the specifications mentioned below.
4-core * 1.5mm² conformed with 60245 IEC57
* 1 Earth wire is included (Yellow/Green).
- Arrange each wire length as shown below.
Make sure that each wire is stripped 10mm from the end.



- Attach round crimp-type terminal to each wire as shown in the below.
Select the size of round crimp-type terminal after considering the specifications of terminal block and wire diameter.

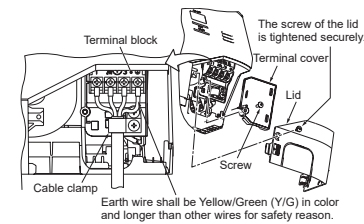


2. Connecting cable

- Remove the lid.
- Remove the terminal cover.
- Remove the cable clamp.
- Connect the connecting wire to the terminal block.
- Fix the connecting cable by cable clamp.
- Fix the terminal cover.
- Fix the lid.

NOTE

Take care not to confuse the terminal numbers for indoor and outdoor connections.



WARNING
Incorrect wiring connection can cause malfunction or fire.

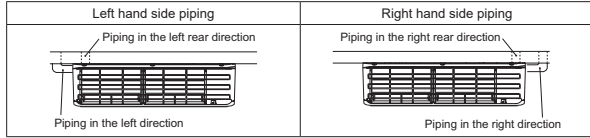
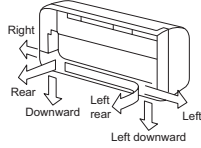
6. FORMING PIPING AND DRAIN HOSE

1. Forming piping

Piping is possible in the right, rear, downward, left, left rear or left downward direction.

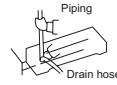
NOTE

Sufficient care must be taken not to damage the panels when connecting pipes.



Forming of piping.

- Hold the bottom of the piping and fix direction before stretching it and shaping it.



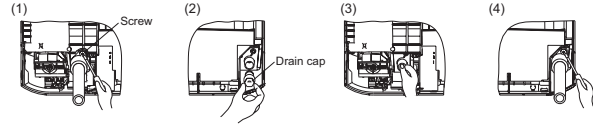
Taping of the exterior

- Tape only the portion that goes through the wall.
- Always tape the wiring with the piping.



2. Drain change procedures

- Remove the screw and drain hose.
- Remove the drain cap by hand or pliers.
- Insert the drain cap which was removed at procedure (2) securely using a hexagonal wrench etc.
- Install the drain hose and screw securely.

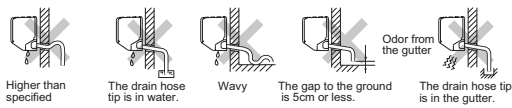


CAUTION

Incorrect installation of drain hose and cap can cause water leakage.

7. DRAINAGE WORK

- Arrange the drain hose in a downward angle.
- Avoid the following drain piping.

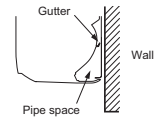


- Pour water to the drain pan located under the heat exchanger, and ensure that the water is discharged outdoor.
- When extended drain hose is present inside the room, insulate it securely with heat insulator available in the market.

Since this air-conditioner is designed to collect dew drops on the rear surface to the drain pan, do not install the connecting wire above the gutter.

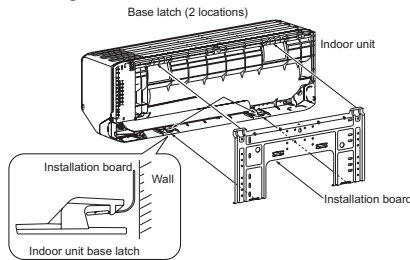
CAUTION

Incorrect drainage work can cause water leakage.



8. INSTALLING INDOOR UNIT

Installing the indoor unit to installation board



- Pass the pipe through the hole in the wall, and hook the upper part of the indoor unit to the installation board.

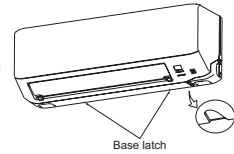


- Gently push the lower part to fix the indoor unit base lower latch to installation board.



Removing the indoor unit from installation board

- Push up at the marked portion of the indoor unit base latch, and slightly pull it toward you (both right and left hand sides). (The indoor unit base latch can be removed from the installation board.)
- Push up the indoor unit upward so that it can be removed from installation board.



9. CONNECTING PIPING WORK

1. Preparation of connecting pipe

1.1 Selecting connecting pipe

Select connecting pipe according to the following table.

| | |
|-------------|-------|
| Gas pipe | φ9.52 |
| Liquid pipe | φ6.35 |

- Pipe wall thickness must be greater than or equal to 0.8mm.
- Pipe material must be O-type (Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe ICS 23.040.15, ICS 77.150.30).

1.2 Cutting connecting pipe

- Cut the connecting pipe to the required length with pipe cutter.
- Hold the pipe downward and remove the burrs. Make sure that no foreign material enters the pipe.
- Cover the connecting pipe ends with the tape.

2. Piping work

2.1 Flaring pipe

- Take out flare nuts from the service valves of indoor unit and engage them onto connecting pipes.
- Flare the pipes according to table and figure shown below.

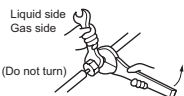
Flare dimensions for R32 are different from those for conventional refrigerant. Although it is recommended to use the flaring tools designed specifically for R32 or R410A, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the dimension B with a flare adjustment gauge.

| Copper pipe outer diameter | A | B [Rigid (clutch) type] | Copper pipe outer diameter | |
|----------------------------|------|-------------------------|----------------------------|--------------|
| | | | R32 or R410A | Conventional |
| φ6.35 | 9.1 | 0-0.5 | 1.0-1.5 | |
| φ9.52 | 13.2 | | | |

2.2 Connecting pipes

- Connect pipes on both liquid and gas sides.
- Tighten nuts to specified torque shown in the table below.

| Service valve size (mm) | Tightening torque (N·m) |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| φ6.35 (1/4") | 14-18 |
| φ9.52 (3/8") | 34-42 |



CAUTION

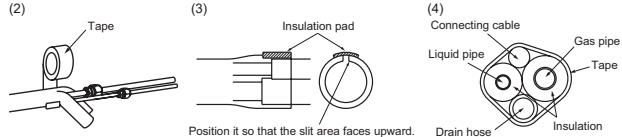
- Do not apply refrigerating machine oil to the flared surface. It can cause refrigerant leakage.
- Do not apply excess torque to the flared nuts. The flared nuts may crack resulting in refrigerant leakage.

3. Heating and condensation prevention

- Dress the connecting pipe (both liquid and gas pipes) with insulation to prevent it from heating and dew condensation.

Use the heat insulating material which can withstand 120°C or higher temperature. Make sure that insulation is wrapped tightly around the pipes and no gap is left between them.

- Wrap the refrigerant pipings of indoor unit with indoor unit heat insulation using tape.
- Cover the flare-connected joints (indoor side) with the indoor unit heat insulation and wrap it with an insulation pad (standard accessory provided with indoor unit).
- Wrap the connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose with the tape.



NOTE

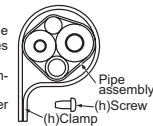
Locations where relative humidity exceeds 70%, both liquid and gas pipes need to be dressed with 20mm or thicker heat insulation materials.

CAUTION

- Improper insulation can cause condensate(water) formation during cooling operation. Condensate can leak or drip causing damage to household property.
- Poor heat insulating capacity can cause pipe outer surface to reach high temperature during heating operation. It can cause cable deterioration and personal injury.

4. Finishing work

- Make sure that the exterior portion of connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose is wrapped properly with tape. Shape the connecting pipes to match with the contours of the pipe assembly route.
- Fix the pipe assembly with the wall using clamps and screws. Pipe assembly should be anchored every 1.5m or less to isolate the vibration.
- Install the service cover securely. Water may enter the unit if service cover is not installed properly, resulting in unit malfunction and failure.



CAUTION

Make sure that the connecting pipes do not touch the components within the unit. If pipes touch the internal components, it may generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

10. HOW TO OPEN, CLOSE, REMOVE AND INSTALL THE AIR INLET PANEL

1. Open

Pull the air inlet panel at both ends of lower part and release latches, then pull up the panel until you feel resistance.

(The panel stops at approx. 70° open position)

2. Close

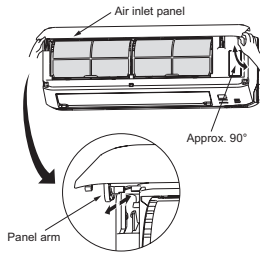
Hold the panel at both ends of lower part, lower it downward slowly, then push it slightly until the latch works.

3. Removing

Open the panel by 90° (as shown in the right illustration) and then pull it forward.

4. Installing

Insert the panel arm into the slot on the front panel from the position shown in right illustration, hold the panel at both ends of lower part, lower it downward slowly, then push it slightly until the latch works.



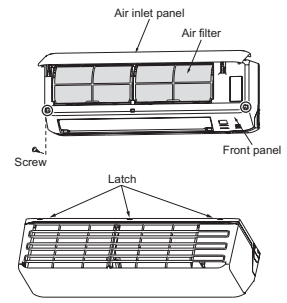
11. HOW TO REMOVE AND INSTALL FRONT PANEL

1. Removing

- (1) Remove the air inlet panel and the air filters.
- (2) Remove the 2 screws.
- (3) Remove the 3 upper latches and then front panel can be removed.

2. Installing

- (1) Cover the unit with the front panel and fix 3 upper latches.
- (2) Secure the front panel with the 2 screws.
- (3) Install the air inlet panel and the air filters.



12. INSTALLING WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROL

Mount the batteries

- (1) Slide and take out the cover of backside.
- (2) Mount the batteries [R03 (AAA, Micro), × 2 pieces] in the body properly.
(Fit the poles with the indication marks + & -)
- (3) Set the cover again.

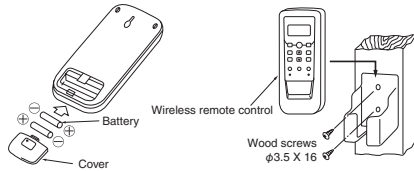
NOTE

- Do not use new and old batteries together.
- In case the unit is not operated for a long time, take out the batteries

Installing remote control holder

- (1) Select the place where the unit can receive signals.
- (2) Fix the holder to pillar or wall with wood screws.

- Do not mix old and new batteries, or batteries of different types (manganese/alkaline).



13. INSTALLING TWO AIR-CONDITIONERS IN THE SAME ROOM

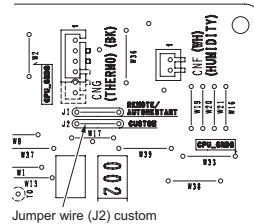
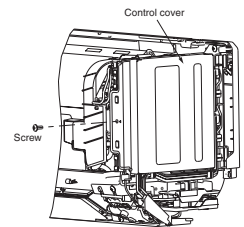
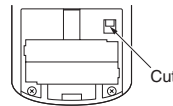
In case two air-conditioners are installed in the same room, apply this setting so that one unit can be operated with only one remote control.

Setting one remote control

- (1) Slide and take out the cover and batteries.
- (2) Cut the switching line next to the battery with wire cutters.
- (3) Set the batteries and cover again.

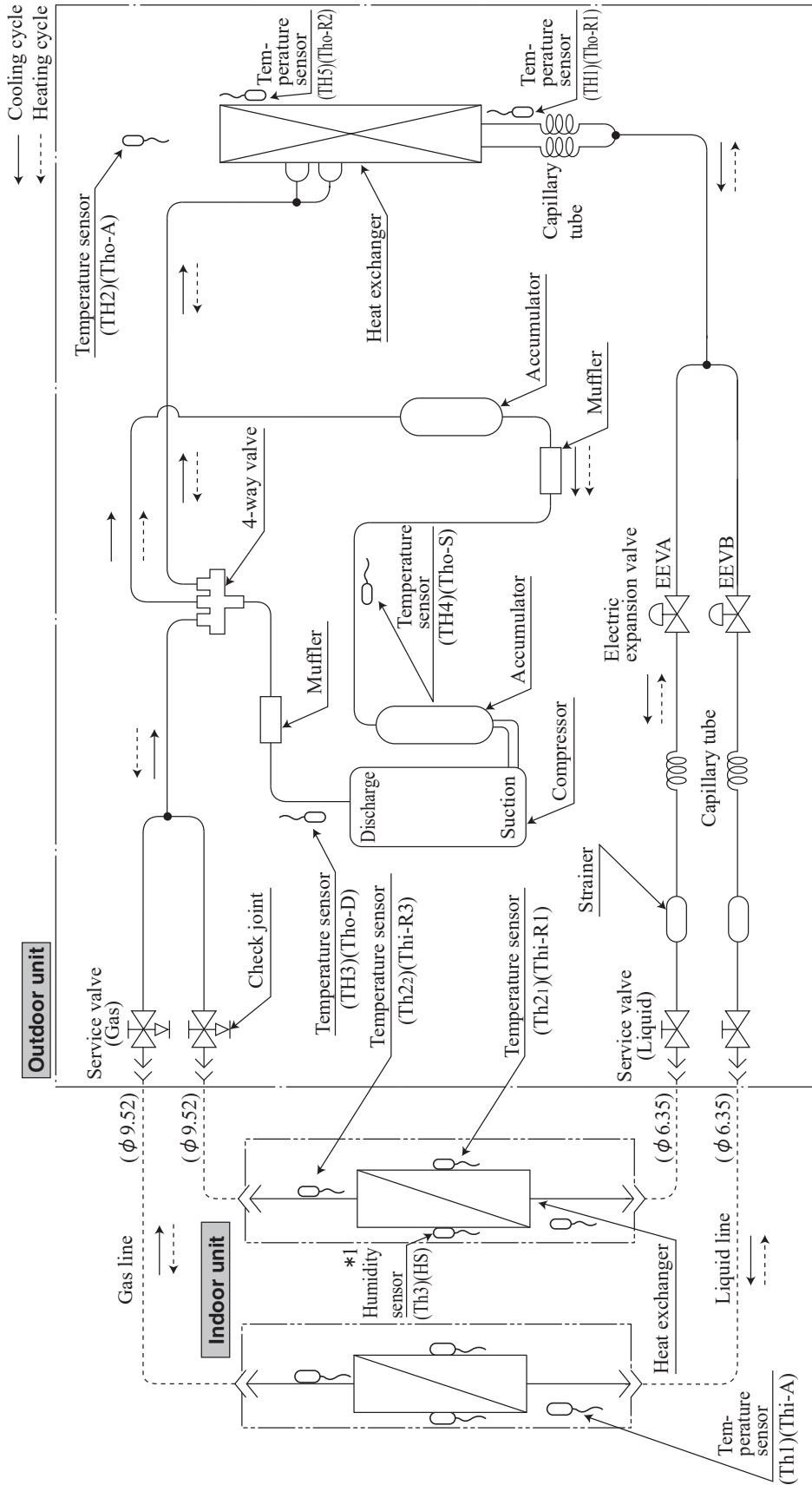
Setting one indoor unit

- (1) Remove the front panel.
- (2) Remove the control cover. (Remove the screw.)
- (3) Cut jumper wire J2 (marked CUSTOM on the PCB) on the indoor control board. Do not allow the cut wires to contact any other wiring.
- (4) Install the control box and front panel.



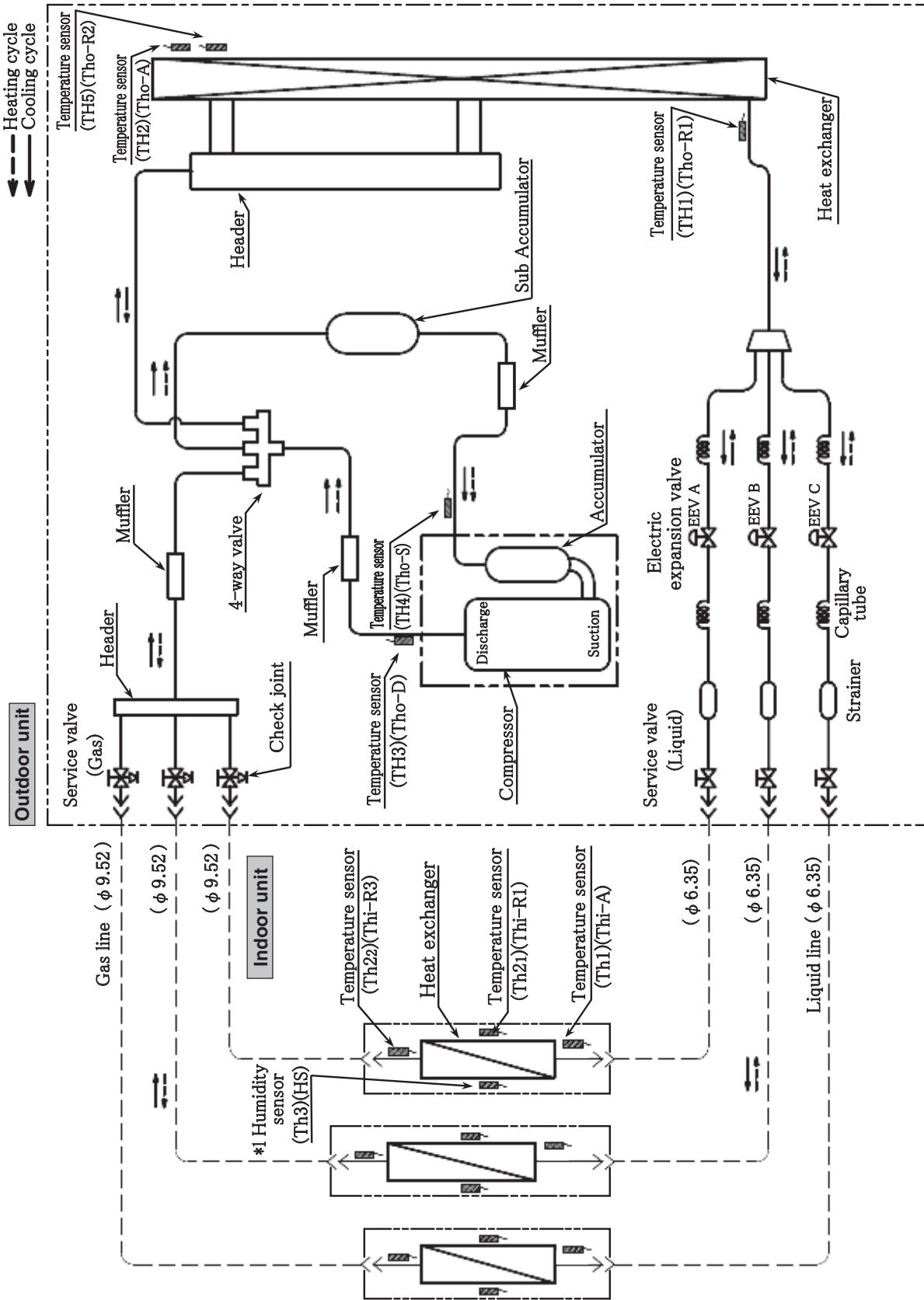
3. PIPING SYSTEMS

(1) Model SCM30ZS-W



*1 Humidity sensor
SRK35ZS-W, SRK35ZS-WF and SKM-ZSP-W series only.

(2) Model SCM41ZS-W



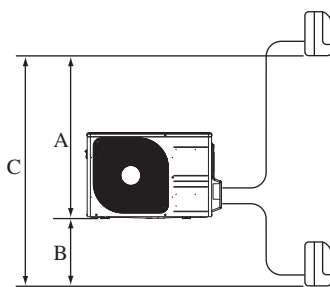
*1 Humidity sensor
SRK35ZS-W, SRK35ZS-WF and SKM-ZSP-W series only.

4. RANGE OF USAGE & LIMITATIONS

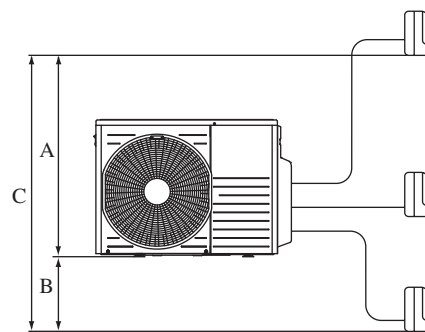
Models SCM30, 41ZS-W

| Item | | Model | SCM30ZS-W | SCM41ZS-W |
|--|---|-------|--|--|
| | | | | |
| Indoor intake air temperature (Upper, lower limits) | Cooling | | Approximately 18 to 32°C | |
| | Heating | | Approximately 15 to 30°C | |
| Outdoor air temperature (Upper, lower limits) | Cooling | | Approximately -15 to 46°C | |
| | Heating | | Approximately -15 to 24°C | |
| Indoor units that can be used in combination | Number of connected units | | 2 units | 2 to 3 units |
| | Total of indoor units (class kW) | | 3.0–5.0kW | 4.0–7.0kW |
| Total length for all rooms | | | Max. 30m | Max. 40m |
| Length for one indoor unit | | | Max. 25m | |
| Difference in height between indoor and outdoor units | When indoor unit is above outdoor unit (A) | | Max. 15m | |
| | When indoor unit is below outdoor unit (B) | | Max. 15m | |
| Difference in height between indoor units (C) | | | Max. 25m | |
| Compressor stop/start frequency | 1 cycle time | | 6 min. or more (from stop to stop or from start to start) | 8 min. or more (from stop to stop or from start to start) |
| | Stop time | | 3 min or more | |
| Power source voltage | Voltage fluctuation | | Within $\pm 10\%$ of rated voltage | |
| | Voltage drop during start | | Within $\pm 15\%$ of rated voltage | |
| | Interval unbalance | | Within $\pm 3\%$ of rated voltage | |
| Power cable length | | | 18m ⁽¹⁾ | 17m ⁽¹⁾ |

Note(1) The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.



SCM30ZS-W



SCM41ZS-W

5. TABLE OF INDOOR UNIT COMBINATIONS

- The combinations of the indoor units is indicated by numbers. They are read as follows.
(Example) SRK20ZS-W → 20 SRK25ZS-W → 25
- The capacity of the indoor units is shown by rooms. If this exceeds the maximum capacity of the outdoor unit, the demand capacity will be proportionally distributed.
- If units are to be combined, use the table below to make the proper selection.

• Number of connectable indoor units

| | SCM30ZS-W | SCM41ZS-W |
|------|-----------|-----------|
| Min. | 2 | 2 |
| Max. | 2 | 3 |

(1) Model SCM30ZS-W

With all indoor unit

<Cooling>

| Indoor unit combination | | Cooling capacity (kW) | | | | | Power consumption (W) | | | Standard current (A) | | |
|-------------------------|---------|-----------------------|------|----------------|----------|------|-----------------------|----------|------|----------------------|------|------|
| | | Indoor unit capacity | | Total capacity | | | Min. | Standard | Max. | 220V | 230V | 240V |
| | | A | B | Min. | Standard | Max. | | | | | | |
| 1 unit | 15 | 1.50 | - | 1.4 | 1.5 | 2.2 | 320 | 350 | 710 | 1.8 | 1.7 | 1.6 |
| | 20 | 2.00 | - | 1.4 | 2.0 | 2.9 | 320 | 510 | 930 | 2.6 | 2.5 | 2.4 |
| | 25 | 2.50 | - | 1.4 | 2.5 | 3.1 | 320 | 710 | 990 | 3.6 | 3.5 | 3.3 |
| 2 units | 15 + 15 | 1.50 | 1.50 | 1.6 | 3.0 | 4.4 | 320 | 520 | 1280 | 2.7 | 2.5 | 2.4 |
| | 15 + 20 | 1.29 | 1.71 | 1.6 | 3.0 | 4.9 | 320 | 520 | 1520 | 2.7 | 2.5 | 2.4 |
| | 15 + 25 | 1.13 | 1.88 | 1.6 | 3.0 | 5.0 | 320 | 520 | 1600 | 2.7 | 2.5 | 2.4 |
| | 20 + 20 | 1.50 | 1.50 | 1.6 | 3.0 | 5.0 | 320 | 520 | 1600 | 2.7 | 2.5 | 2.4 |
| | 20 + 25 | 1.33 | 1.67 | 1.6 | 3.0 | 5.0 | 320 | 520 | 1600 | 2.7 | 2.5 | 2.4 |
| | 25 + 25 | 1.50 | 1.50 | 1.6 | 3.0 | 5.0 | 320 | 520 | 1600 | 2.7 | 2.5 | 2.4 |

<Heating>

| Indoor unit combination | | Heating capacity (kW) | | | | | Power consumption (W) | | | Standard current (A) | | |
|-------------------------|---------|-----------------------|------|----------------|----------|------|-----------------------|----------|------|----------------------|------|------|
| | | Indoor unit capacity | | Total capacity | | | Min. | Standard | Max. | 220V | 230V | 240V |
| | | A | B | Min. | Standard | Max. | | | | | | |
| 1 unit | 15 | 2.0 | - | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.2 | 250 | 510 | 940 | 2.4 | 2.3 | 2.2 |
| | 20 | 3.0 | - | 1.0 | 3.0 | 4.3 | 250 | 780 | 1260 | 3.7 | 3.6 | 3.4 |
| | 25 | 3.4 | - | 1.0 | 3.4 | 4.5 | 250 | 910 | 1310 | 4.4 | 4.2 | 4.0 |
| 2 units | 15 + 15 | 2.00 | 2.00 | 1.1 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 250 | 740 | 1490 | 3.5 | 3.4 | 3.2 |
| | 15 + 20 | 1.71 | 2.29 | 1.1 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 250 | 740 | 1490 | 3.5 | 3.4 | 3.2 |
| | 15 + 25 | 1.50 | 2.50 | 1.1 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 250 | 740 | 1490 | 3.5 | 3.4 | 3.2 |
| | 20 + 20 | 2.00 | 2.00 | 1.1 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 250 | 740 | 1490 | 3.5 | 3.4 | 3.2 |
| | 20 + 25 | 1.78 | 2.22 | 1.1 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 250 | 740 | 1490 | 3.5 | 3.4 | 3.2 |
| | 25 + 25 | 2.00 | 2.00 | 1.1 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 250 | 740 | 1490 | 3.5 | 3.4 | 3.2 |

(2) Model SCM41ZS-W
With all indoor unit

<Cooling>

| Indoor unit combination | | Cooling capacity (kW) | | | | | | Power consumption (W) | | | Standard current (A) | | |
|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|------|------|----------------|----------|------|-----------------------|----------|------|----------------------|------|------|
| | | Indoor unit capacity | | | Total capacity | | | Min. | Standard | Max. | 220V | 230V | 240V |
| | | A | B | C | Min. | Standard | Max. | | | | | | |
| 1 unit | 15 | 1.50 | - | - | 1.4 | 1.5 | 2.2 | 320 | 360 | 740 | 1.7 | 1.6 | 1.6 |
| | 20 | 2.00 | - | - | 1.4 | 2.0 | 2.9 | 320 | 530 | 970 | 2.5 | 2.4 | 2.3 |
| | 25 | 2.50 | - | - | 1.4 | 2.5 | 3.1 | 320 | 730 | 1040 | 3.5 | 3.3 | 3.2 |
| | 35 | 3.50 | - | - | 1.4 | 3.5 | 4.0 | 320 | 1120 | 1330 | 5.4 | 5.1 | 4.9 |
| 2 units | 15 + 15 | 1.50 | 1.50 | - | 1.5 | 3.0 | 4.9 | 320 | 550 | 1400 | 2.6 | 2.5 | 2.4 |
| | 15 + 20 | 1.50 | 2.00 | - | 1.5 | 3.5 | 5.5 | 320 | 700 | 1600 | 3.3 | 3.2 | 3.1 |
| | 15 + 25 | 1.50 | 2.50 | - | 1.5 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 320 | 910 | 1650 | 4.4 | 4.2 | 4.0 |
| | 15 + 35 | 1.20 | 2.80 | - | 1.5 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 320 | 910 | 1650 | 4.4 | 4.2 | 4.0 |
| | 20 + 20 | 2.00 | 2.00 | - | 1.5 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 320 | 910 | 1650 | 4.4 | 4.2 | 4.0 |
| | 20 + 25 | 1.78 | 2.22 | - | 1.5 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 320 | 910 | 1650 | 4.4 | 4.2 | 4.0 |
| | 20 + 35 | 1.45 | 2.55 | - | 1.5 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 320 | 910 | 1650 | 4.4 | 4.2 | 4.0 |
| | 35 + 35 | 2.00 | 2.00 | - | 1.5 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 320 | 910 | 1650 | 4.4 | 4.2 | 4.0 |
| 3 units | 15 + 15 + 15 | 1.33 | 1.33 | 1.33 | 1.6 | 4.0 | 6.3 | 320 | 720 | 1650 | 3.4 | 3.3 | 3.2 |
| | 15 + 15 + 20 | 1.20 | 1.20 | 1.60 | 1.6 | 4.0 | 6.3 | 320 | 720 | 1650 | 3.4 | 3.3 | 3.2 |
| | 15 + 15 + 25 | 1.09 | 1.09 | 1.82 | 1.6 | 4.0 | 6.3 | 320 | 720 | 1650 | 3.4 | 3.3 | 3.2 |
| | 15 + 15 + 35 | 0.92 | 0.92 | 2.15 | 1.6 | 4.0 | 6.3 | 320 | 720 | 1650 | 3.4 | 3.3 | 3.2 |
| | 15 + 20 + 20 | 1.09 | 1.45 | 1.45 | 1.6 | 4.0 | 6.3 | 320 | 720 | 1650 | 3.4 | 3.3 | 3.2 |
| | 15 + 20 + 25 | 1.00 | 1.33 | 1.67 | 1.6 | 4.0 | 6.3 | 320 | 720 | 1650 | 3.4 | 3.3 | 3.2 |
| | 15 + 20 + 35 | 0.86 | 1.14 | 2.00 | 1.6 | 4.0 | 6.3 | 320 | 720 | 1650 | 3.4 | 3.3 | 3.2 |
| | 20 + 20 + 20 | 1.33 | 1.33 | 1.33 | 1.6 | 4.0 | 6.3 | 320 | 720 | 1650 | 3.4 | 3.3 | 3.2 |
| | 20 + 20 + 25 | 1.23 | 1.23 | 1.54 | 1.6 | 4.0 | 6.3 | 320 | 720 | 1650 | 3.4 | 3.3 | 3.2 |
| 20 + 25 + 25 | 1.14 | 1.43 | 1.43 | 1.6 | 4.0 | 6.3 | 320 | 720 | 1650 | 3.4 | 3.3 | 3.2 | |

<Heating>

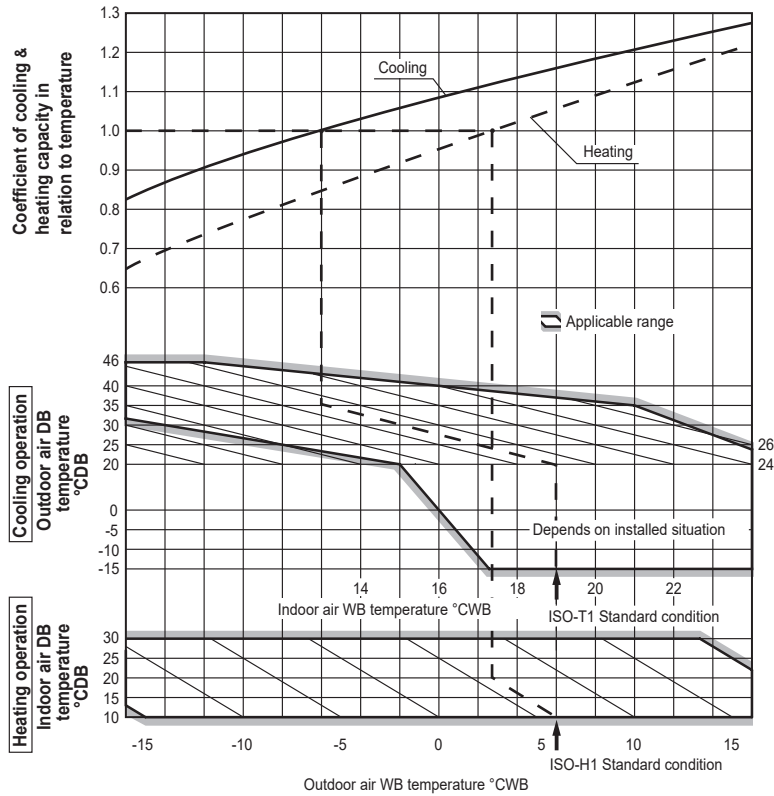
| Indoor unit combination | | Heating capacity (kW) | | | | | | Power consumption (W) | | | Standard current (A) | | |
|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|------|------|----------------|----------|------|-----------------------|----------|------|----------------------|------|------|
| | | Indoor unit capacity | | | Total capacity | | | Min. | Standard | Max. | 220V | 230V | 240V |
| | | A | B | C | Min. | Standard | Max. | | | | | | |
| 1 unit | 15 | 2.00 | - | - | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.2 | 250 | 550 | 990 | 2.6 | 2.5 | 2.4 |
| | 20 | 3.00 | - | - | 1.0 | 3.0 | 4.3 | 250 | 870 | 1330 | 4.1 | 3.9 | 3.8 |
| | 25 | 3.40 | - | - | 1.0 | 3.4 | 4.5 | 250 | 1010 | 1390 | 4.8 | 4.6 | 4.4 |
| | 35 | 4.50 | - | - | 1.0 | 4.5 | 5.0 | 250 | 1390 | 1550 | 6.6 | 6.3 | 6.0 |
| 2 units | 15 + 15 | 1.70 | 1.70 | - | 1.1 | 3.4 | 6.6 | 250 | 700 | 1580 | 3.3 | 3.2 | 3.0 |
| | 15 + 20 | 1.67 | 2.23 | - | 1.1 | 3.9 | 6.6 | 250 | 840 | 1580 | 4.0 | 3.8 | 3.6 |
| | 15 + 25 | 1.69 | 2.81 | - | 1.1 | 4.5 | 6.6 | 250 | 1020 | 1580 | 4.8 | 4.6 | 4.4 |
| | 15 + 35 | 1.35 | 3.15 | - | 1.1 | 4.5 | 6.6 | 250 | 1020 | 1580 | 4.8 | 4.6 | 4.4 |
| | 20 + 20 | 2.25 | 2.25 | - | 1.1 | 4.5 | 6.6 | 250 | 1020 | 1580 | 4.8 | 4.6 | 4.4 |
| | 20 + 25 | 2.00 | 2.50 | - | 1.1 | 4.5 | 6.6 | 250 | 1020 | 1580 | 4.8 | 4.6 | 4.4 |
| | 20 + 35 | 1.64 | 2.86 | - | 1.1 | 4.5 | 6.6 | 250 | 1020 | 1580 | 4.8 | 4.6 | 4.4 |
| 35 + 35 | 2.25 | 2.25 | - | 1.1 | 4.5 | 6.6 | 250 | 1020 | 1580 | 4.8 | 4.6 | 4.4 | |
| 3 units | 15 + 15 + 15 | 1.50 | 1.50 | 1.50 | 1.2 | 4.5 | 6.9 | 250 | 810 | 1580 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.5 |
| | 15 + 15 + 20 | 1.35 | 1.35 | 1.80 | 1.2 | 4.5 | 6.9 | 250 | 810 | 1580 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.5 |
| | 15 + 15 + 25 | 1.23 | 1.23 | 2.05 | 1.2 | 4.5 | 6.9 | 250 | 810 | 1580 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.5 |
| | 15 + 15 + 35 | 1.04 | 1.04 | 2.42 | 1.2 | 4.5 | 6.9 | 250 | 810 | 1580 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.5 |
| | 15 + 20 + 20 | 1.23 | 1.64 | 1.64 | 1.2 | 4.5 | 6.9 | 250 | 810 | 1580 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.5 |
| | 15 + 20 + 25 | 1.13 | 1.50 | 1.88 | 1.2 | 4.5 | 6.9 | 250 | 810 | 1580 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.5 |
| | 15 + 20 + 35 | 0.96 | 1.29 | 2.25 | 1.2 | 4.5 | 6.9 | 250 | 810 | 1580 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.5 |
| | 20 + 20 + 20 | 1.50 | 1.50 | 1.50 | 1.2 | 4.5 | 6.9 | 250 | 810 | 1580 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.5 |
| | 20 + 20 + 25 | 1.38 | 1.38 | 1.73 | 1.2 | 4.5 | 6.9 | 250 | 810 | 1580 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.5 |
| 20 + 25 + 25 | 1.29 | 1.61 | 1.61 | 1.2 | 4.5 | 6.9 | 250 | 810 | 1580 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.5 | |

6. SELECTION CHARTS

Correct the cooling and heating capacity in accordance with the conditions as follows. The net cooling and heating capacity can be obtained in the following way.

Net capacity = Capacity shown on specification × Correction factors as follows

(1) Coefficient of cooling and heating capacity in relation to temperatures



(2) Correction of cooling and heating capacity in relation to one way length of refrigerant piping

It is necessary to correct the cooling and heating capacity in relation to the one way piping length between the indoor and outdoor units.

| Piping length [m] | 7 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 25 |
|-------------------|-----|------|-------|-------|------|
| Cooling | 1.0 | 0.99 | 0.975 | 0.965 | 0.95 |
| Heating | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 |

(3) Correction relative to frosting on outdoor heat exchanger during heating

In additions to the foregoing corrections (1), (2) the heating capacity needs to be adjusted also with respect to the frosting on the outdoor heat exchanger.

| Air inlet temperature of outdoor unit in °CWB | -15 | -10 | -9 | -7 | -5 | -3 | -1 | 1 | 3 | 5 or more |
|---|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|-----------|
| Adjustment coefficient | 0.95 | 0.95 | 0.94 | 0.93 | 0.91 | 0.88 | 0.86 | 0.87 | 0.92 | 1.00 |

How to obtain the cooling and heating capacity

Example : The net cooling capacity of the model SCM41ZS-W (SRK20ZS-W : 3 units) with the piping length of 10m, indoor wet-bulb temperature at 19.0°C and outdoor dry-bulb temperature 35°C is

$$\text{Net cooling capacity} = \underbrace{(1.33 \times 3)}_{\substack{\text{Table of indoor unit combination (Refer to page 75.)} \\ \text{Outdoor unit SCM41ZS-W} \\ \text{Indoor unit SRK20ZS-W} \times 3 \text{ units}}} \times \underbrace{0.99}_{\substack{\text{Length 10m}}} \times \underbrace{1.0}_{\substack{\text{Factor by air} \\ \text{temperatures}}} \doteq 3.95\text{kW}$$

7. OPTION PARTS



7.1 Wired remote control

(1) Model RC-EX3A

PJZ012A171 

1) Safety precautions

- Please read this manual carefully before starting installation work to install the unit properly. Every one of the followings is important information to be observed strictly.

| | |
|--|---|
|  WARNING | Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in serious consequences such as death, severe injury, etc. |
|  CAUTION | Failure to follow these instructions properly may cause injury or property damage. |

It could have serious consequences depending on the circumstances.

- The following pictograms are used in the text.

| | | | |
|---|-----------|---|---------------------------------------|
|  | Never do. |  | Always follow the instructions given. |
|---|-----------|---|---------------------------------------|

- Keep this manual at a safe place where you can consult with whenever necessary. Show this manual to installers when moving or repairing the unit. When the ownership of the unit is transferred, this manual should be given to a new owner.

WARNING



Consult your dealer or a professional contractor to install the unit.

Improper installation made on your own may cause electric shocks, fire or dropping of the unit.



Installation work should be performed properly according to this installation manual.

Improper installation work may result in electric shocks, fire or break-down.



Be sure to use accessories and specified parts for installation work.

Use of unspecified parts may result in drop, fire or electric shocks.



Install the unit properly to a place with sufficient strength to hold the weight.

If the place is not strong enough, the unit may drop and cause injury.



Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.

Power source with insufficient and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.



Shut OFF the main power source before starting electrical work.

Otherwise, it could result in electric shocks, break-down or malfunction.



Do not modify the unit.

It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.



Be sure to turn OFF the power circuit breaker before repairing/ inspecting the unit.

Repairing/inspecting the unit with the power circuit breaker turned ON could cause electric shocks or injury.

⚠ WARNING**Do not install the unit in appropriate environment or where inflammable gas could generate, flow in, accumulate or leak.**

If the unit is used at places where air contains dense oil mist, steam, organic solvent vapor, corrosive gas (ammonium, sulfuric compound, acid, etc) or where acidic or alkaline solution, special spray, etc. are used, it could cause electric shocks, break-down, smoke or fire as a result of significant deterioration of its performance or corrosion.

Do not install the unit where water vapor is generated excessively or condensation occurs.

It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.

Do not use the unit in a place where it gets wet, such as laundry room.

It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.

Do not operate the unit with wet hands.

It could cause electric shocks.

Do not wash the unit with water.

It could cause electric shocks, fire, or break-down.

Use the specified cables for wiring, and connect them securely with care to protect electronic parts from external forces.

Improper connections or fixing could cause heat generation, fire, etc.

Seal the inlet hole for remote control cable with putty.

If dew, water, insect, etc. enters through the hole, it could cause electric shocks, fire or break-down.

If dew or water enters the unit, it may cause screen display anomalies.

When installing the unit at a hospital, telecommunication facility, etc., take measures to suppress electric noises.

It could cause malfunction or break-down due to hazardous effects on the inverter, private power generator, high frequency medical equipment, radio communication equipment, etc.

The influences transmitted from the remote control to medical or communication equipment could disrupt medical activities, video broadcasting or cause noise interference.

Do not leave the remote control with its upper case removed.

If dew, water, insect, etc. enters through the hole, it could cause electric shocks, fire or break-down.

 CAUTION

Do not install the remote control at following places.

- (1) It could cause break-down or deformation of remote control.
- Where it is exposed to direct sunlight
 - Where the ambient temperature becomes 0 °C or below, or 40 °C or above
 - Where the surface is not flat
 - Where the strength of installation area is insufficient
- (2) Moisture may be attached to internal parts of the remote control, resulting in a display failure.
- Place with high humidity where condensation occurs on the remote control
 - Where the remote control gets wet
- (3) Accurate room temperature may not be detected using the temperature sensor of the remote control.
- Where the average room temperature cannot be detected
 - Place near the equipment to generate heat
 - Place affected by outside air in opening/closing the door
 - Place exposed to direct sunlight or wind from air-conditioner
 - Where the difference between wall and room temperature is large



To connect to a personal computer via USB, use the dedicated software.



Do not connect other USB devices and the remote control at the same time.

It could cause malfunction or break-down of the remote control/personal computer.

2) Accessories & prepare on site

Following parts are provided.

| | |
|-------------|--|
| Accessories | R/C main unit, wood screw (φ 3.5 × 16) 2 pcs., Quick reference |
|-------------|--|

Following parts are arranged at site. Prepare them according to the respective installation procedures.

| Item name | Q'ty | Remark |
|---|-------------|--|
| Switch box For 1 piece or 2 pieces (JIS C 8340 or equivalent) | 1 | These are not required when installing directly on a wall. |
| Thin wall steel pipe for electric appliance directly on a wall. (JIS C 8305 or equivalent) | As required | |
| Lock nut, bushing (JIS C 8330 or equivalent) | As required | |
| Lacing (JIS C 8425 or equivalent) | As required | Necessary to run R/C cable on the wall. |
| Putty | Suitably | For sealing gaps |
| Molly anchor | As required | |
| R/C cable (0.3mm ² × 2 pcs.) | As required | See right table when longer than 100m |

When the cable length is longer than 100m, the max size for wires used in the R/C case is 0.5mm². Connect them to wires of larger size near the outside of R/C. When wires are connected, take measures to prevent water, etc. from entering inside.

| | |
|--------|-------------------------------|
| ≦ 200m | 0.5mm ² × 2 cores |
| ≦ 300m | 0.75mm ² × 2 cores |
| ≦ 400m | 1.25mm ² × 2 cores |
| ≦ 600m | 2.0mm ² × 2 cores |

3) Installation place

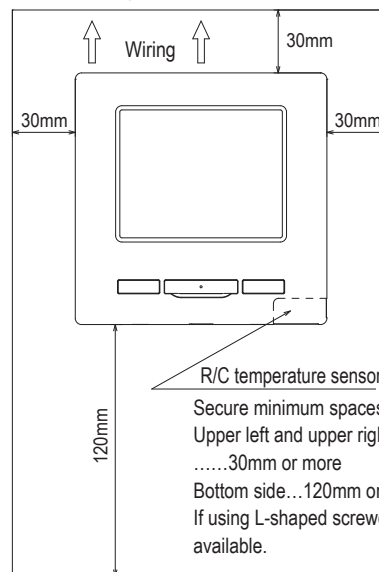
Secure the installation space shown in the figure.

For the installation method, “embedding wiring” or “exposing wiring” can be selected.

For the wiring direction, “Backward”, “Upper center” or “Upper left” can be selected.

Determine the installation place in consideration of the installation method and wiring direction.

Installation space



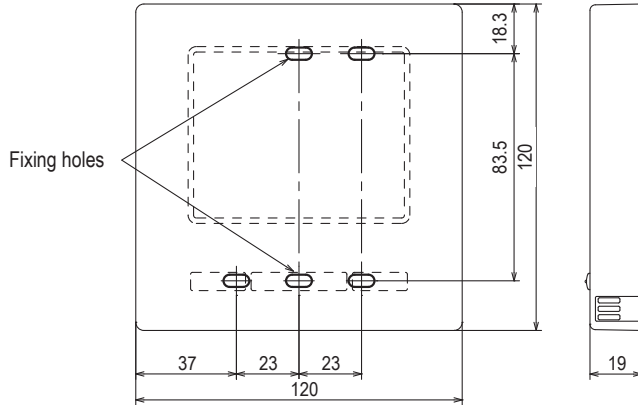
R/C temperature sensor

Secure minimum spaces for disassembling the case.
 Upper left and upper right sides
30mm or more
 Bottom side...120mm or more
 If using L-shaped screwdriver, 50mm or more is available.

4) Installation procedure

Perform installation and wiring work for the remote control according to the following procedure.

Dimensions (Viewed from front)



To disassemble the R/C case into the upper and lower pieces after assembling them once

- Insert the tip of flat head screwdriver or the like in the recess at the lower part of R/C and twist it lightly to remove. It is recommended that the tip of the screwdriver be wrapped with tape to avoid damaging the case.

Take care to protect the removed upper case from moisture or dust.

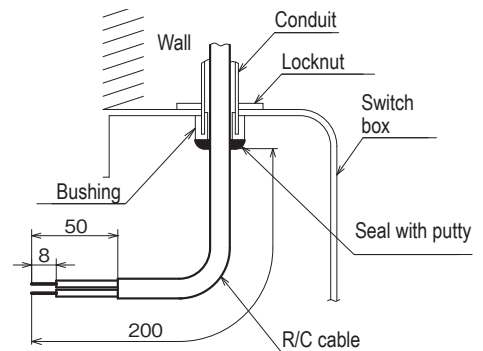
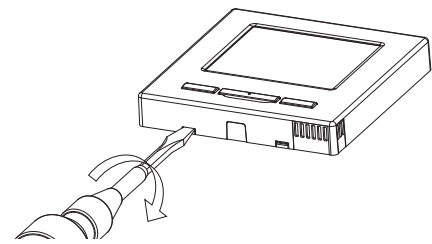
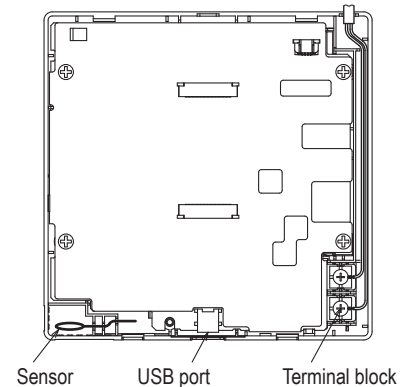
In case of embedding wiring

(When the wiring is retrieved "Backward")

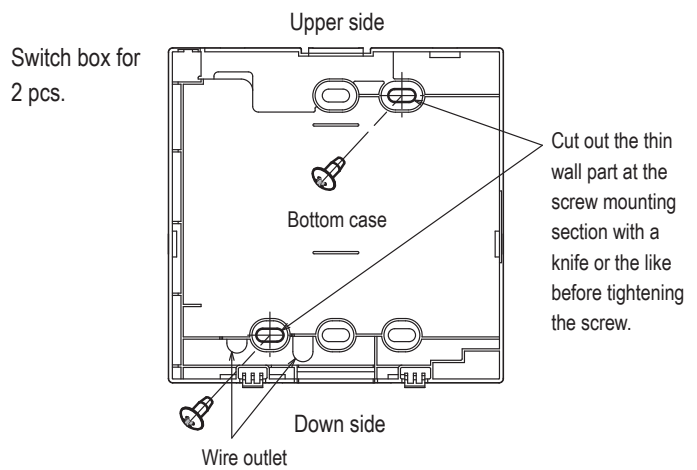
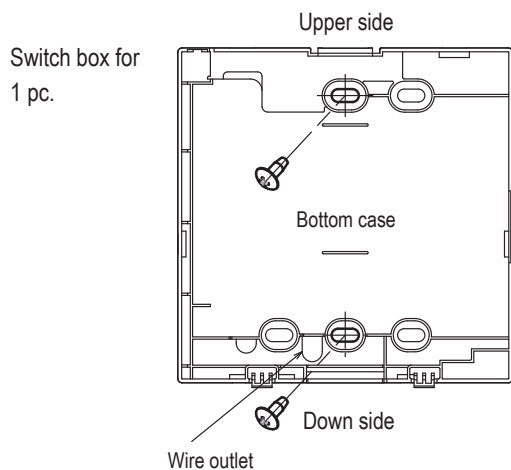
① Embed the switch box and the R/C wires beforehand.

Seal the inlet hole for the R/C wiring with putty.

PCB side (Viewed from rear)



② When wires are passed through the bottom case, fix the bottom case at 2 places on the switch box.



- ③ Connect wires from X and Y terminals of R/C to X and Y terminals of indoor unit. R/C wires (X, Y) have no polarity. Fix wires such that the wires will run around the terminal screws on the top case of R/C.
- ④ Install the upper case with care not to pinch wires of R/C.

Cautions for wire connection

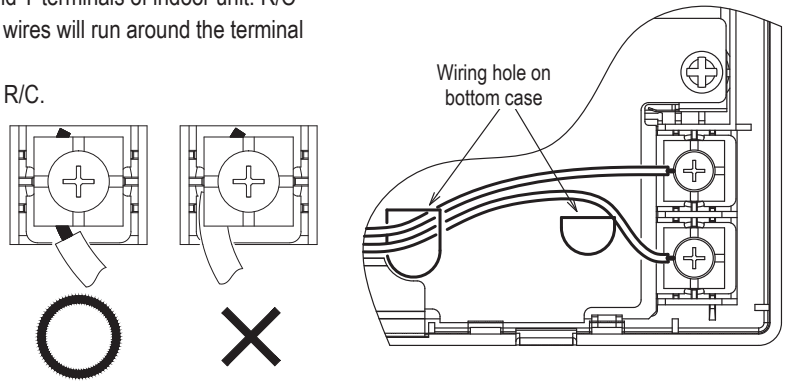
Use wires of no larger than 0.5mm² for wiring running through the remote control case. Take care not to pinch the sheath.

Tighten by hand (0.7N·m or less) the wire connection. If the wire is connected using an electric driver, it may cause failure or deformation.

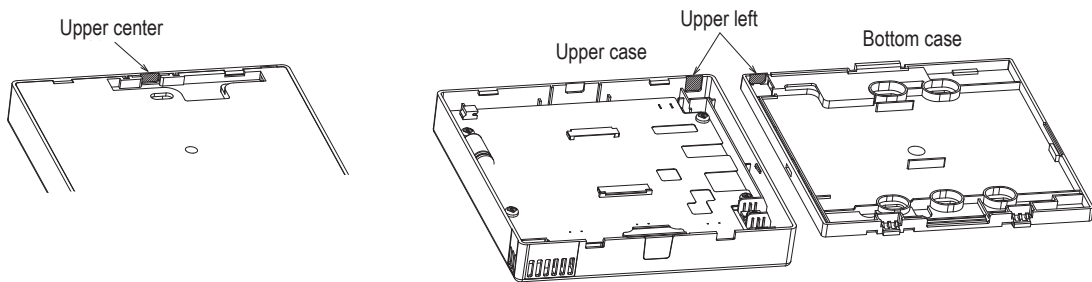
In case of exposing wiring

(When the wiring is taken out from the “upper center” or “upper left” of R/C)

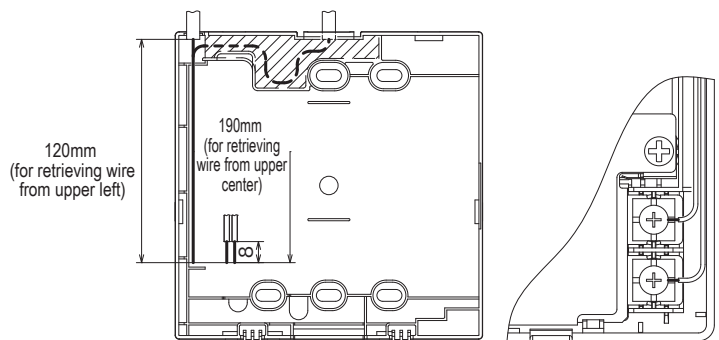
- ① Cut out the thin wall sections on the cases for the size of wire.



When taking the wiring out from the upper center, open a hole before separating the upper and bottom cases. This will reduce risk of damaging the PCB and facilitate subsequent work.
 When taking the wiring out from the upper left, take care not to damage the PCB and not to leave any chips of cut thin wall inside.



- ② Fix the bottom R/C case on a flat surface with two wood screws.
- ③ In case of the upper center, pass the wiring behind the bottom case. (Hatched section)
- ④ Connect wires from X and Y terminals of R/C to X and Y terminals of indoor unit. R/C wires (X, Y) have no polarity. Fix wires such that the wires will run around the terminal screws on the top case of R/C.
- ⑤ Install the top case with care not to pinch wires of R/C.
- ⑥ Seal the area cut in ① with putty.

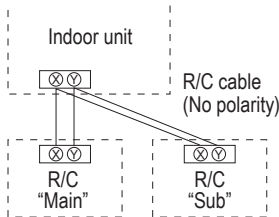


5) Main/Sub setting when more than one remote control are used

Up to two units of R/C can be used at the maximum for 1 indoor unit or 1 group.

One is main R/C and the other is sub R/C.

Operating range is different depending on the main or sub R/C.



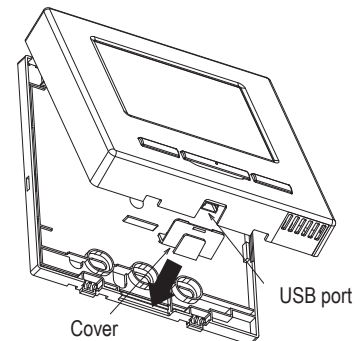
| R/C operations | | Main | Sub | |
|--|-------------------------|--------------------------------|-----|---|
| Run/Stop, Change set temp., Change flap direction, Auto swing, Change fan speed operations | | ○ | ○ | |
| High power operation, Energy-saving operation | | ○ | ○ | |
| Silent mode control | | ○ | × | |
| Useful functions | Individual flap control | ○ | × | |
| | Anti draft setting | ○ | × | |
| | Timer | ○ | ○ | |
| | Favorite setting | ○ | ○ | |
| | Weekly timer | ○ | × | |
| | Home leave mode | ○ | × | |
| | External ventilation | ○ | ○ | |
| | Select the language | ○ | ○ | |
| | Silent mode control | ○ | × | |
| | Energy-saving setting | ○ | × | |
| Filter | Filter sign reset | ○ | ○ | |
| User setting | Initial settings | | ○ | ○ |
| | Administrator settings | Permission/Prohibition setting | ○ | × |
| | | Outdoor unit silent mode timer | ○ | × |
| | | Setting temp. range | ○ | × |
| | Temp increment setting | ○ | × | |
| | Set temp. display | ○ | ○ | |
| | R/C display setting | ○ | ○ | |
| Change administrator password | ○ | ○ | | |
| F1/F2 function setting | ○ | ○ | | |

○ : operable × : not operable

| R/C operations | | Main | Sub | | |
|-----------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|---|---|
| Service setting | Installation settings | Installation date | ○ | × | |
| | | Company information | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Test run | ○ | × | |
| | | Static pressure adjustment | ○ | × | |
| | | Change auto-address | ○ | × | |
| | | Address setting of main IU | ○ | × | |
| | | IU back-up function | ○ | × | |
| | | Motion sensor setting | ○ | × | |
| | | R/C function settings | Main/Sub of R/C | ○ | ○ |
| | | | Return air temp. | ○ | × |
| | R/C sensor | | ○ | × | |
| | R/C sensor adjustment | | ○ | × | |
| | Operation mode | | ○ | × | |
| | °C / °F | | ○ | × | |
| | Fan speed | | ○ | × | |
| | External input | | ○ | × | |
| | Upper/lower flap control | | ○ | × | |
| | Left/right flap control | | ○ | × | |
| | IU settings | Ventilation setting | ○ | × | |
| | | Auto-restart | ○ | × | |
| | | Auto temp. setting | ○ | × | |
| | | Auto fan speed | ○ | × | |
| | | Service & Maintenance | IU address | ○ | ○ |
| | | | Next service date | ○ | × |
| | | | Operation data | ○ | × |
| | Error display | | Error history | ○ | ○ |
| | | | Display/erase anomaly data | ○ | × |
| | | | Reset periodical check | ○ | ○ |
| | Saving IU settings | | ○ | × | |
| | Special settings | | Erase IU address | ○ | × |
| | | | CPU reset | ○ | ○ |
| | | | Restore of default setting | ○ | × |
| | | Touch panel calibration | ○ | ○ | |
| | Indoor unit capacity display | ○ | × | | |

Advice: Connection to personal computer

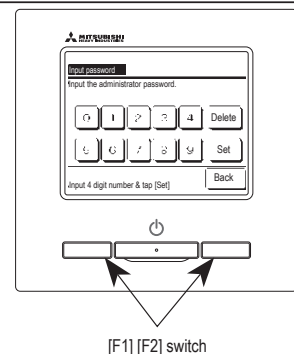
It can be set from a personal computer via the USB port (mini-B). Connect after removing the cover for USB port of upper case. Replace the cover after use. Special software is necessary for the connection. For details, view the web site.



Advice: Initializing of password

Administrator password (for daily setting items) and service password (for installation, test run and maintenance) are used.

- The administrator password at factory default is "0000". This setting can be changed (Refer to User's Manual).
If the administrator password is forgotten, it can be initialized by holding down the [F1] and [F2] switches together for five seconds on the administrator password input screen.
- Service password is "9999", which cannot be changed.
When the administrator password is input, the service password is also accepted.





(2) Model RC-E5

PJA012D730 

Read together with indoor unit's installation manual.



⚠ WARNING

- Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire. 
- Make sure the power source is turned off when electric wiring work.
Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur. 

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not install the remote control at the following places in order to avoid malfunction.

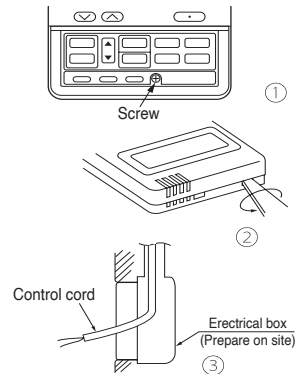
| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| (1) Places exposed to direct sunlight | (4) Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation |
| (2) Places near heat devices | (5) Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly |
| (3) High humidity places | (6) Uneven surface |


- Do not leave the remote control without the upper case.
In case the upper case needs to be detached, protect the remote control with a packaging box or bag in order to keep it away from water and dust. 

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Accessories | Remote control, wood screw (φ3.5×16) 2 pieces |
| Prepare on site | Remote control cord (2 cores) the insulated thickness in 1mm or more. [In case of embedding cord] Electrical box, M4 screw (2 pieces) [In case of exposing cord] Cord clamp (if needed) |

Installation procedure

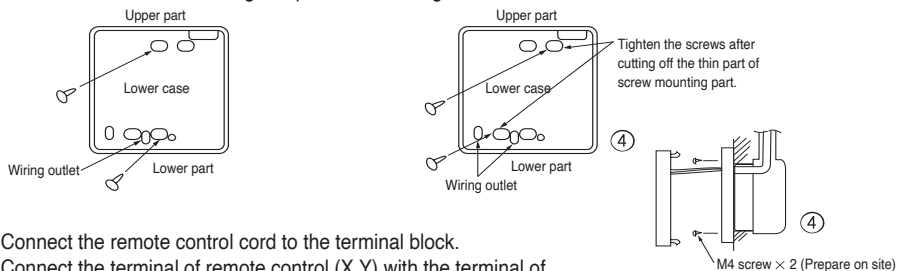
- ① Open the cover of remote control, and remove the screw under the buttons without fail.
- ② Remove the upper case of remote control.
Insert a flat-blade screwdriver into the dented part of the upper part of the remote control, and wrench slightly.



[In case of embedding cord]

- ③ Embed the electrical box and remote control cord beforehand.

- ④ Prepare two M4 screws (recommended length is 12–16mm) on site, and install the lower case to electrical box.
Choose either of the following two positions in fixing it with screws.

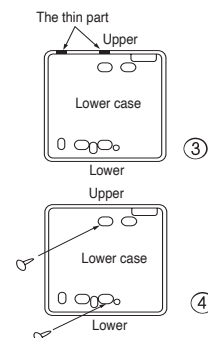


- ⑤ Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block.
Connect the terminal of remote control (X,Y) with the terminal of indoor unit (X,Y). (X and Y are no polarity)

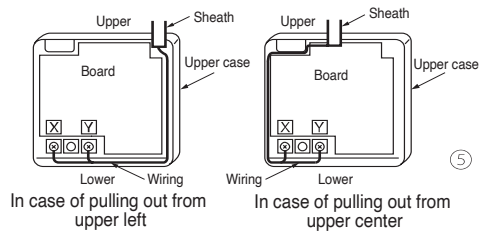
- ⑥ Install the upper case as before so as not to catch up the remote control cord, and tighten with the screws.

[In case of exposing cord]

- ③ You can pull out the remote control cord from left upper part or center upper part.
Cut off the upper thin part of remote control lower case with a nipper or knife, and grind burrs with a file etc.
- ④ Install the lower case to the flat wall with attached two wooden screws.

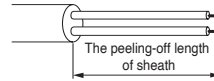


- ⑤ Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block. Connect the terminal of remote control (X,Y) with the terminal of indoor unit (X,Y). (X and Y are no polarity) Wiring route is as shown in the right diagram depending on the pulling out direction.



The wiring inside the remote control case should be within 0.3mm² (recommended) to 0.5mm². The sheath should be peeled off inside the remote control case. The peeling-off length of each wire is as below.

| Pulling out from upper left | Pulling out from upper center |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| X wiring : 215mm | X wiring : 170mm |
| Y wiring : 195mm | Y wiring : 190mm |



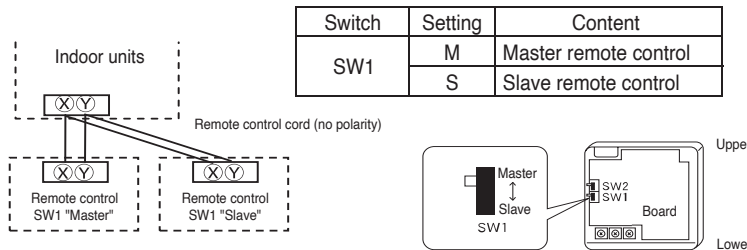
- ⑥ Install the upper case as before so as not to catch up the remote control cord, and tighten with the screws.
- ⑦ In case of exposing cord, fix the cord on the wall with cord clamp so as not to slack.

Installation and wiring of remote control

- ① Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm² × 2 cores wires or cables. (on-site configuration)
- ② Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600m. If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below. But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm². Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.
 - 100 - 200m.....0.5mm² × 2 cores
 - Under 300m.....0.75mm² × 2 cores
 - Under 400m.....1.25mm² × 2 cores
 - Under 500m.....2.0mm² × 2 cores

Master/ slave setting when more than one remote controls are used

A maximum of two remote controls can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)



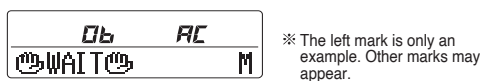
Set SW1 to "Slave" for the slave remote control. It was factory set to "Master" for shipment. Note: The setting "Remote control sensor enabled" is only selectable with the master remote control in the position where you want to check room temperature. The air-conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control regardless of the master/ slave setting of it.

The indication when power source is supplied

When power source is turned on, the following is displayed on the remote control until the communication between the remote control and indoor unit settled.

Master remote control : " 06 AC M"
 Slave remote control : " 06 AC S"

At the same time, a mark or a number will be displayed for two seconds first. This is the software's administration number of the remote control, not an error cord.



When remote control cannot communicate with the indoor unit for half an hour, the below indication will appear. Check wiring of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit etc.



The range of temperature setting

When shipped, the range of set temperature differs depending on the operation mode as below.

Heating : 16-30°C (55-86°F)

Except heating (cooling, fan, dry, automatic) : 18-30°C (62-86°F)

● **Upper limit and lower limit of set temperature can be changed with remote control.**

Upper limit setting: valid during heating operation. Possible to set in the range of 20 to 30°C (68 to 86°F).

Lower limit setting: valid except heating (automatic, cooling, fan, dry) Possible to set in the range of 18 to 26°C (62 to 79°F).

When you set upper and lower limit by this function, control as below.

- When ⑫ TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "INDN CHANGE" (factory setting)
 【 If upper limit value is set 】

During heating, you cannot set the value exceeding the upper limit.

【 If lower limit value is set 】

During operation mode except heating, you cannot set the value below the lower limit.

- When ⑫ TEMP RANGE SET, remote control function of function setting mode is "NO INDN CHANGE"
 【 If upper limit value is set 】

During heating, even if the value exceeding the upper limit is set, upper limit value will be sent to the indoor unit.
 But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.

【 If lower limit value is set 】

During except heating, even if the value lower than the lower limit is set, lower limit value will be sent to the indoor unit.
 But, the indication is the same as the temperature set.

● **How to set upper and lower limit value**

- Stop the air-conditioner, and press (SET) and (MODE) button at the same time for over three seconds .

The indication changes to "FUNCTION SET ▼".

- Press button once, and change to the "TEMP RANGE ▲" indication.
- Press (SET) button, and enter the temperature range setting mode.
- Select "UPPER LIMIT ▼" or "LOWER LIMIT ▲" by using button.
- Press (SET) button to fix.

- When "UPPER LIMIT ▼" is selected (valid during heating)

① Indication: " ▼ ^ SET UP " → "UPPER 30°C ▼"

② Select the upper limit value with temperature setting button . Indication example: "UPPER 26°C ▼ ^" (blinking)

③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication example: "UPPER 26°C" (Displayed for two seconds)

After the fixed upper limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "UPPER LIMIT ▼".

- When "LOWER LIMIT ▲" is selected (valid during cooling, dry, fan, automatic)

① Indication: " ▼ ^ SET UP " → "LOWER 18°C ^"

② Select the lower limit value with temperature setting button . Indication example: "LOWER 24°C ▼ ^" (blinking)

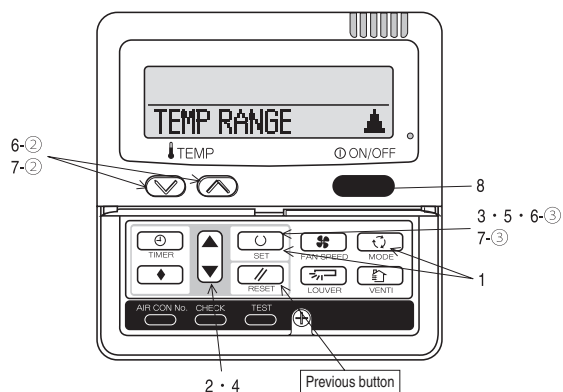
③ Press (SET) button to fix. Indication for example: "LOWER 24°C" (Displayed for two seconds)

After the fixed lower limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "LOWER LIMIT ▼".

- Press button to finish.

• It is possible to finish by pressing button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.

• During setting, if you press (RESET) button, you return to the previous screen.



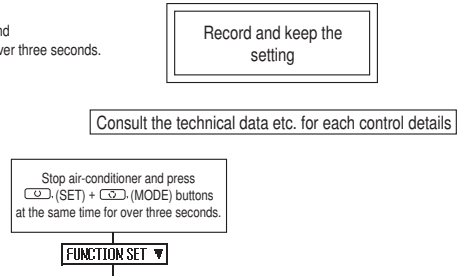
The functional setting

- The initial function setting for typical using is performed automatically by the indoor unit connected, when remote control and indoor unit are connected.
- As long as they are used in a typical manner, there will be no need to change the initial settings.
- If you would like to change the initial setting marked "○", set your desired setting as for the selected item.
- The procedure of functional setting is shown as the following diagram.

[Flow of function setting]

Start : Stop air-conditioner and press "○" (SET) and "◀▶" (MODE) buttons at the same time for over three seconds.
 Finalize : Press "○" (SET) button.
 Reset : Press "⏮" (RESET) button.
 Select : Press "▲▼" button.
 End : Press [ON/OFF] button.

It is possible to finish above setting on the way, and unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
 "○": Initial settings
 "※": Automatic criterion



To next page

| Function | setting | |
|-------------------------------|------------------|--|
| ◇ 01 ESP SET | ESP VALID | ○ Validate setting of ESP: External Static Pressure |
| | ESP INVALID | ○ Invalidate setting of ESP |
| 02 AUTO RUN SET | AUTO RUN ON | ※ Automatic operation is impossible |
| | AUTO RUN OFF | ※ |
| 03 TEMP SW | VALID | ○ Temperature setting button is not working |
| | INVALID | ○ |
| 04 MODE SW | VALID | ○ Mode button is not working |
| | INVALID | ○ |
| 05 ON/OFF SW | VALID | ○ On/Off button is not working |
| | INVALID | ○ |
| 06 FAN SPEED SW | VALID | ○ Fan speed button is not working |
| | INVALID | ○ |
| 07 LOUVER SW | VALID | ○ Louver button is not working |
| | INVALID | ○ |
| 08 TIMER SW | VALID | ○ Timer button is not working |
| | INVALID | ○ |
| * 09 SENSOR SET | SENSOR OFF | ○ Remote sensor is not working. |
| | SENSOR ON | ○ Remote sensor is working. |
| | SENSOR +3.0℃ | ○ Remote sensor is working, and to be set for producing +3.0°C increase in temperature. |
| | SENSOR +2.0℃ | ○ Remote sensor is working, and to be set for producing +2.0°C increase in temperature. |
| | SENSOR +1.0℃ | ○ Remote sensor is working, and to be set for producing +1.0°C increase in temperature. |
| | SENSOR -1.0℃ | ○ Remote sensor is working, and to be set for producing -1.0°C increase in temperature. |
| | SENSOR -2.0℃ | ○ Remote sensor is working, and to be set for producing -2.0°C increase in temperature. |
| | SENSOR -3.0℃ | ○ Remote sensor is working, and to be set for producing -3.0°C increase in temperature. |
| 10 AUTO RESTART | INVALID | ○ |
| | VALID | ○ |
| ◆◇ 11 VENT LINK SET | NO VENT | ○ In case of Single split series, by connecting ventilation device to CnT of the indoor printed circuit board (in case of VRF series, by connecting it to CnD of the indoor printed circuit board), the operation of ventilation device is linked with the operation of indoor unit. |
| | VENT LINK | ○ In case of Single split series, by connecting ventilation device to CnT of the indoor printed circuit board (in case of VRF series, by connecting it to CnD of the indoor printed circuit board), you can operate /stop the ventilation device independently by (VENT) button. |
| | NO VENT LINK | ○ |
| 12 TEMP RANGE SET | INDOOR CHANGE | ○ If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will vary following the control. |
| | NO INDOOR CHANGE | ○ If you change the range of set temperature, the indication of set temperature will not vary following the control, and keep the set temperature. |
| 13 FAN FAN | HI-HLD-LO | ※ Air flow of fan becomes of or the four speed of . |
| | HI-LO | ※ Air flow of fan becomes of . |
| | HI-HLD | ※ Air flow of fan becomes of . |
| | 1 FAN SPEED | ※ Air flow of fan is fixed at one speed. |
| ◇ 14 POSITION | POSITION STOP | ○ If you change the remote control function "14 POSITION", you must change the indoor function "04 POSITION" accordingly. You can select the louver stop position in the four. |
| | FREE STOP | ○ The louver can stop at any position. |
| 15 MODEL TYPE | HEAT PUMP | ※ |
| | COOLING ONLY | ※ |
| 16 EXTERNAL CONTROL SET | INDIVIDUAL | ○ If you input signal into CnT of the indoor printed circuit board from external, the indoor unit will be operated independently according to the input from external. |
| | FOR ALL UNITS | ○ If you input into CnT of the indoor printed circuit board from external, all units which connect to the same remote control are operated according to the input from external. |
| 17 ROOM TEMP INDICATION SET | INDICATION OFF | ○ In normal working indication, indoor unit temperature is indicated instead of air flow. |
| | INDICATION ON | ○ (Only the master remote control can be indicated.) |
| 18 INDICATION | INDICATION ON | ○ Heating preparation indication should not be indicated. |
| | INDICATION OFF | ○ |
| 19 °F SET | °C | ○ Temperature indication is by degree C |
| | °F | ○ Temperature indication is by degree F |

To next page

Notes (1) * The mark cannot use SRK series.
 (2) ◇ The mark cannot use SRR series.
 (3) ◆ The mark cannot use SRF series.

[ON/OFF] button (finished)

Note 1: The initial setting marked "※" is defaulted by connected indoor and outdoor unit, and is automatically defined as following table.

| Function No. | Item | Default | Model |
|---------------------------|--------------|--------------|--|
| Remote control function02 | AUTO RUN SET | AUTO RUN ON | "Auto-RUN" mode selectable indoor unit. |
| | | AUTO RUN OFF | Indoor unit without "Auto-RUN" mode |
| Remote control function06 | FAN SPEED SW | INVALID | Indoor unit with two or three step of air flow setting |
| | | INVALID | Indoor unit with only one of air flow setting |
| Remote control function07 | LOUVER SW | VALID | Indoor unit with automatically swing louver |
| | | INVALID | Indoor unit without automatically swing louver |
| Remote control function13 | I/U FAN | HI-MED-LO | Indoor unit with three step of air flow setting |
| | | HI-LO | Indoor unit with two step of air flow setting |
| | | 1 FAN SPEED | Indoor unit with only one of air flow setting |
| Remote control function15 | MODEL TYPE | HEAT PUMP | Heat pump unit |
| | | COOLING ONLY | Exclusive cooling unit |

Note 3: As for plural indoor unit, set indoor functions to each master and slave indoor unit.
But only master indoor unit is received the setting change of indoor unit function "05 EXTERNAL INPUT" and "06 PERMISSION / PROHIBITION".

From previous page

Indoor unit No. are indicated only when plural indoor units are connected.

To set other indoor unit, press [AIR CON No.] button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen (for example: I/U 000 ▲).

| Function | setting | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|---|
| *02 FAN SPEED SET | STANDARD | ※ |
| | HIGH SPEED 1 | ※ |
| | HIGH SPEED 2 | |
| *03 FILTER SIGN SET | INDICATION OFF | |
| | TYPE 1 | ○ |
| | TYPE 2 | |
| | TYPE 3 | |
| | TYPE 4 | |
| 04 POSITION | POSITION STOP | ○ |
| | FREE STOP | |
| 05 EXTERNAL INPUT | LEVEL INPUT | ○ |
| | PULSE INPUT | |
| 06 PERMISSION/PROHIBITION | INVALID | ○ |
| | VALID | |
| *07 EMERGENCY STOP | INVALID | ○ |
| | VALID | |
| *08 ※ SP OFFSET | OFFSET +3.0c | |
| | OFFSET +2.0c | |
| | OFFSET +1.0c | |
| | NO OFFSET | ○ |
| *09 RETURN AIR TEMP | OFFSET +2.0c | |
| | OFFSET +1.5c | |
| | OFFSET +1.0c | |
| | NO OFFSET | ○ |
| | OFFSET -1.0c | |
| | OFFSET -1.5c | |
| | OFFSET -2.0c | |
| *10 ※ FAN CONTROL | LOW FAN SPEED | ○ |
| | SET FAN SPEED | |
| | INTERMITTENCE | |
| | FAN OFF | |
| *11 FROST PREVENTION TEMP | TEMP HIGH | |
| | TEMP LOW | ○ |
| *12 FROST PREVENTION CONTROL | FAN CONTROL ON | ○ |
| | FAN CONTROL OFF | |
| *13 DRAIN PUMP LINK | ※○ | ○ |
| | ※○AND※ | |
| | ※○AND※AND※ | |
| | ※○AND※ | |
| *14 ※ FAN REMAINING | NO REMAINING | ○ |
| | 0.5 HOUR | |
| | 1 HOUR | |
| | 6 HOUR | |
| *15 ※ FAN REMAINING | NO REMAINING | ○ |
| | 0.5 HOUR | |
| | 2 HOUR | |
| | 6 HOUR | |
| *16 ※ FAN INTERMITTENCE | NO REMAINING | ○ |
| | 20minOFF 5minON | |
| | 5minOFF 5minON | |
| *17 PRESSURE CONTROL | STANDARD | ※ |
| | TYPE1 | ※ |

| Fan tap | | Indoor unit air flow setting | | | |
|---------------|----------------|------------------------------|--------------|---------|---------|
| FAN SPEED SET | STANDARD | UH - Hi - Me - Lo | Hi - Me - Lo | Hi - Lo | Hi - Me |
| | HIGH SPEED1, 2 | UH - UH - Hi - Me | UH - Hi - Me | UH - Me | UH - Hi |

Initial function setting of some indoor unit is "HIGH SPEED".
4 speed is not able to be set with wireless remote control.

The filter sign is indicated after running for 180 hours.
The filter sign is indicated after running for 600 hours.
The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours.
The filter sign is indicated after running for 1000 hours, then the indoor unit will be stopped by compulsion after 24 hours.

If you change the indoor function "04 POSITION", you must change the remote control function "14 POSITION" accordingly.
You can select the lower stop position in the four.
The louver can stop at any position.

Permission/prohibition control of operation will be valid.

With the VRF series, it is used to stop all indoor units connected with the same outdoor unit immediately.
When stop signal is input from remote on-off terminal "CnT-6", all indoor units are stopped immediately.

To be reset for producing +3.0 C increase in temperature during heating.
To be reset for producing +2.0 C increase in temperature during heating.
To be reset for producing +1.0 C increase in temperature during heating.

To be reset producing +2.0 C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
To be reset producing +1.5 C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
To be reset producing +1.0 C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.

To be reset producing -1.0 C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
To be reset producing -1.5 C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.
To be reset producing -2.0 C increase in return air temperature of indoor unit.

When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is low speed.

When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is set speed.

When heating thermostat is OFF, fan speed is operated intermittently.

When heating thermostat is OFF, the fan is stopped.

When the remote sensor is working, "FAN OFF" is set automatically.

Do not set "FAN OFF" when the indoor unit's sensor is working.

Change of indoor heat exchanger temperature to start frost prevention control.

Working only with the single split series.

To control frost prevention, the indoor fan tap is raised.

Drain pump is run during cooling and dry.

Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and heating.

Drain pump is run during cooling, dry, heating and fan.

Drain pump is run during cooling, dry and fan.

After cooling is stopped, the fan does not perform extra operation.

After cooling is stopped, the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.

After cooling is stopped, the fan perform extra operation for an hour.

After cooling is stopped, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.

After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan does not perform extra operation.

After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for half an hour.

After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for two hours.

After heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform extra operation for six hours.

During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes with low fan speed after twenty minutes' OFF.

During heating is stopped or heating thermostat is OFF, the fan perform intermittent operation for five minutes with low fan speed after five minutes' OFF.

Connected "OA Processing" type indoor unit, and is automatically defined.

From previous page

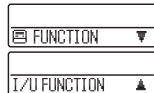
Note (1) * The mark cannot use SRK, SRR and SRF series.

How to set function

1. Stop air-conditioner and press **(SET)** **(MODE)** buttons at the same time for over three seconds, and the "FUNCTION SET ▼" will be displayed.



2. Press **(SET)** button.
3. Make sure which do you want to set, "FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION ▲" (indoor unit function).
4. Press **▲** or **▼** button.
Select "FUNCTION ▼" (remote control function) or "I/U FUNCTION ▲" (indoor unit function).



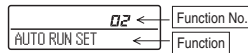
5. Press **(SET)** button.

6. 【On the occasion of remote control function selection】

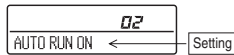
- ① "DATA LOADING" (Indication with blinking)

↓
Display is changed to "01 **EXP SET**".

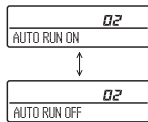
- ② Press **▲** or **▼** button.
"No. and function" are indicated by turns on the remote control function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)



- ③ Press **(SET)** button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(for example) "AUTO RUN ON" ← If "02 AUTO RUN SET" is selected



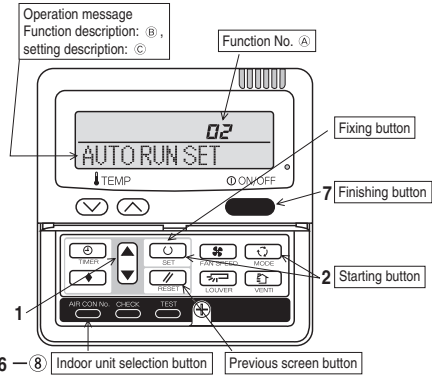
- ④ Press **▲** or **▼** button.
Select the setting.



- ⑤ Press **(SET)** button.
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, Set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously, and if to finish, go to 7.



7. Press **ON/OFF** button.
Setting is finished.



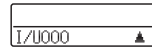
【On the occasion of indoor unit function selection】

- ① "DATA LOADING" (Blinking for 2 to 23 seconds to read the data)

↓
Indication is changed to "02 FAN SPEED SET".
Go to ②.

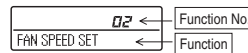
【Note】

- (1) If plural indoor units are connected to a remote control, the indication is "I/U 000" (blinking) ← The lowest number of the indoor unit connected is indicated.

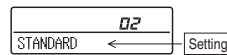


- (2) Press **▲** or **▼** button.
Select the number of the indoor unit you are to set
If you select "ALL UNIT ▼", you can set the same setting with all unites.
- (3) Press **(SET)** button.

- ② Press **▲** or **▼** button.
"No. and function" are indicated by turns on the indoor unit function table, then you can select from them.
(For example)



- ③ Press **(SET)** button.
The current setting of selected function is indicated.
(For example) "STANDARD" ← If "02 FAN SPEED SET" is selected.



- ④ Press **▲** or **▼** button.
Select the setting.

- ⑤ Press **(SET)** button.
"SET COMPLETE" will be indicated, and the setting will be completed.
Then after "No. and function" indication returns, set as the same procedure if you want to set continuously, and if to finish, go to 7.



※ When plural indoor units are connected to a remote control, press the **AIR CON No.** button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen. (example "I/U 000 ▲")

- It is possible to finish by pressing **ON/OFF** button on the way, but unfinished change of setting is unavailable.
- During setting, if you press **(RESET)** button, you return to the previous screen.
- Setting is memorized in the control and it is saved independently of power failure.

【How to check the current setting】

When you select from "No. and function" and press set button by the previous operation, the "Setting" displayed first is the current setting.
(But, if you select "ALL UNIT ▼", the setting of the lowest number indoor unit is displayed.)

(3) Operation and setting from wired remote control

Blank : Not compatible
 - : No function on remote control
 ○ : Correspondence
 △ : Corresponding part

| Setting & display item | | Description | RC-EX3A | RC-E5 | |
|--|--|--|--|-------|---|
| 1.Remote control network | | | | | |
| 1 | Control plural indoor units by a single remote control | A remote control can control plural indoor units up to 16 (in one group of remote control network). An address is set to each indoor unit. | ○ | ○ | |
| 2 | Main/sub setting of remote controls | A pair of remote controls (including optional wireless remote control) can be connected within the remote control network. Set one to "Main" and the other to "Sub". | ○ | ○ | |
| 2.TOP screen, Switch manipulation | | | | | |
| 1 | Menu | "Control", "State", or "Details" can be selected. (3-8) | ○ | - | |
| 2 | Operation mode | "Cooling", "Heating", "Fan", "Dry" or "Auto" can be set. | ○ | ○ | |
| 3 | Set temp. | "Set temperature" can be set by 0.5°C interval. | ○ | ○ | |
| 4 | Air flow direction | "Air flow direction" [Individual flap control] can be set. Select Enable or Disable for the "3D AUTO". | ○ | △ | |
| 5 | Fan speed | "Fan speed" can be set. | ○ | ○ | |
| 6 | Timer setting | "Timer operation" can be set. | ○ | ○ | |
| 7 | ON/OFF | "On/Off operation of the system" can be done. | ○ | ○ | |
| 8 | F1 SW | The system operates and is controlled according to the function specified to the F1 switch. | ○ | - | |
| 9 | F2 SW | The system operates and is controlled according to the function specified to the F2 switch. | ○ | - | |
| 3.Useful functions | | | | | |
| 1 | Individual flap control | The moving range (the positions of upper limit and lower limit) of the flap for individual flap can be set. | | | |
| 2 | Anti draft setting When the panel with the anti-draft function is assembled. | When the panel with the anti draft function is assembled, select to Enable or Disable the anti draft setting for each operation mode and for each blow outlet. | | | |
| 3 | Timer settings | Set On timer by hour | The period of time to start operation after stopping can be set. • The period of set time can be set within range of 1hour-12hours (1hr interval). • The operation mode, set temp. and fan speed at starting operation can be set. | △ | - |
| | | Set Off timer by hour | The period of time to stop operation after starting can be set. • The period of set time can be set within range of 1hour-12hours (1hr interval). | ○ | ○ |
| | | Set On timer by clock | The clock time to start operation can be set. • The set clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. • [Once (one time only)] or [Everyday] operation can be switched. • The operation mode, set temp and fan speed at starting operation can be set. | △ | ○ |
| | | Set Off timer by clock | The clock time to stop operation can be set. • The set clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. • [Once (one time only)] or [Everyday] operation can be switched. | ○ | ○ |
| | Confirmation of timer settings | Status of timer settings can be seen. | ○ | - | |
| 4 | Favorite setting [Administrator password] | Set the operation mode, setting temperature, air flow capacity and air flow direction for the choice setting operations. Set them for the Favorite set 1 and the Favorite set 2 respectively. | ○ | - | |
| 5 | Weekly timer | On timer and Off timer on weekly basis can be set. • 8-operation patterns per day can be set at a maximum. • The setting clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. • Holiday setting is available. • The operation mode, set temp and fan speed at starting operation can be set. | ○ | ○ | |
| 6 | Home leave mode [Administrator password] | When leaving home for a long period like a vacation leave, the unit can be operated to maintain the room temperature not to be hotter in summer or not to be colder in winter. • The judgment to switch the operation mode (Cooling ⇄ Heating) is done by the both factors of the set temp. and outdoor air temp. • The set temp. and fan speed can be set. | ○ | - | |
| 7 | External Ventilation When the ventilator is combined. | On/Off operation of the external ventilator can be done. It is necessary to set from [Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [R/C function settings] ⇒ [Ventilation setting]. • If the "Independent" is selected for the ventilation setting, the ventilator can be operated or stopped. | ○ | ○ | |
| 8 | Select the language | Select the language to display on the remote control. • Select from English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Turkish, Portuguese, Russian, Polish, Japanese and Chinese. | ○ | - | |
| 9 | Look, look | Indoor temperature, outdoor temperature and power consumption are indicated. | △ | - | |
| 10 | Power consumption indication | The power consumption of today, this week and this year is indicated by a chart. It is possible to compare with yesterday, last week and last year. • This item may not indicate depending on indoor and outdoor units which are combined. | ○ | - | |
| 4.Energy-saving setting | | | | | |
| Administrator password | | | | | |
| 1 | Sleep timer | To prevent the timer from keeping ON, set hours to stop operation automatically with this timer. • The selectable range of setting time is from 30 to 240 minutes. (10 minutes interval) • When setting is "Enable", this timer will activate whenever the ON timer is set. | ○ | - | |
| 2 | Peak-cut timer | Power consumption can be reduced by restructuring the maximum capacity. Set the [Start time], the [End time] and the capacity limit % (Peak-cut %). • 4-operation patterns per day can be set at maximum. • The setting time can be changed by 5-minutes interval. • The selectable range of capacity limit % (Peak-cut %) is from 0% to 40-80% (20% interval). • Holiday setting is available. | ○ | - | |
| 3 | Automatic temp. set back | After the elapse of the set time period, the current set temp. will be set back to the [Set back time]. • The setting can be done in cooling and heating mode respectively. • Selectable range of the set time is from 20 min. to 120 min. (10 min. interval). • Set the [Set back temp.] by 1°C interval. | ○ | - | |
| 4 | Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) When the panel with the infrared sensor (motion sensor) is assembled. | When the infrared sensor (motion sensor) is used, it is necessary to set Enable or Disable for the "Power control" and the "Auto-off". | ○ | - | |
| 5.Filter | | | | | |
| 1 | Filter sign reset | Filter sign reset Setting next cleaning date | | | |
| | | The filter sign can be reset. | | | |
| | | The next cleaning date can be set. | | | |
| 6.User setting | | | | | |
| 1 | Internal settings | Clock setting | The current date and time can be set or revised. • If a power failure continues no longer than 80 hours, the clock continues to tick by the built-in power source. | ○ | - |
| | | Date and time display | [Display] or [Hide] the date and/or time can be set, and [12H] or [24H] display can be set. | ○ | - |
| | | Summer time | When select [Enable], the +1hour adjustment of current time can be set. When select [Disable], the [Summer time] adjustment can be reset. | ○ | - |
| | | Contrast | The contrast of LCD can be adjusted higher or lower. | ○ | - |
| | | Backlight | Switching on/off a light can be set and period of the lighting time can be set within the range of 5sec-90 sec (5sec interval). | ○ | - |
| | | Control sound | It can set with or without [Control sound (beep sound)] at touch panel. | ○ | - |
| | Operation lamp luminance | This is used to adjust the luminance of operation lamp. | ○ | - | |

| Setting & display item | | Description | RC-EX3A | RC-E5 |
|--|---|--|--|-------|
| 2 Administrator settings [Administrator password] | Permission/Prohibition setting | • Permission/Prohibition setting of operation can be set. [On/Off] [Change set temp] [Change operation mode] [Change flap direction] [Change fan speed] [High power operation] [Energy-saving operation] [Timer] Request for administrator can be set. [Individual flap control] [Weekly timer] [Select the language] [Anti draft setting] | ○ | — |
| | Outdoor unit silent mode timer | The period of time to operate the outdoor unit by prioritizing the quietness can be set. • The [Start time] and the [End time] for operating outdoor unit in silent mode can be set. • The period of the operation time can be set once aday by 5 minutes interal. | ○ | ○ |
| | Setting temp. range | The upper/lower limit of temp. setting range can be set. • The limitation of indoor temp. setting range can be set for each operation mode in cooling and heating. | ○ | ○ |
| | Temp increment setting | The temp increment setting can be changed by 0.5°C or 1.0°C. | ○ | ○ |
| | Set temp. display | Ways of displaying setting temperatures can be selected. | ○ | ○ |
| | R/C display setting | Register [Room name] [Name of I/U] Display [Indoor temp. display] or not. Display [Error code display] or not. Display [Heating stand-by display] [Defrost operation display] [Auto cooling/heating display] [Display temp of R/C, Room, Outdoor] or not | ○ | — |
| | Change administrator password | The administrator password can be changed. (Default setting is "0000") The administrator password can be reset. | ○ | — |
| F1/F2 function setting | Functions can be set for F1 and F2. Selectable functions: [High power operation], [Energy-saving operation], [Silent mode cont.], [Home leave mode], [Favorite set 1], [Favorite set 2] and [Filter sign reset]. | ○ | — | |
| 7. Service setting | | | | |
| 1 Installer settings [Service password] | Installation date | The [Installation date] can be registered. • When registering the [Instaration date], the [Next service date] is displayed automatically. (For changing the [Next service date], please refer the item of [Service & Maintenance]) | ○ | — |
| | Company information | The [Company information] can be registered and can be displayed on the R/C. • The [Company] can be registered within 26 characters. • The [Phone No.] can be registered within 13 digits. | ○ | — |
| | Test run | On/Off operation of the test run can be done. | | |
| | Cooling test run | The [Cooling test run] can be done at 5°C of set temp. for 30 minutes. | ○ | ○ |
| | Drain pump test run | Only drain pump can be operated. | | |
| | Static pressure adjustment | In case of combination with only the ducted indoor unit which has a function of static pressure adjustment, the static pressure is adjustable. • It can be set for each indoor unit individually. | | — |
| | Change auto-address | The set address of each indoor unit decided by auto-address setting method can be changed to any other address. | | — |
| | Address setting of main IU | Main indoor unit address can be set. • Only the Main indoor unit can change operation mode and the Sub indoor units dominated by the Main indoor shall follow. • The Main indoor unit can domain 10 indoor units at a maximum. | | — |
| | IU back-up function | When a pair of indoor units (2 groups) is connected to one unit of remote control, it can be set Enable or Disable for the [IU rotation], [IU capacity back-up] and [IU fault back-up] | ○ | — |
| | Infrared sensor setting (Motion sensor setting) When the panel with the infrared sensor (motion sensor) is assembled. | Set Enable or Disable for the infrared sensor detectors of indoor units connected to the remote control. If Disable is selected, it cannot be control the infrared sensor control for the energy-saving setting. | ○ | — |
| Grill lifting operation | Set enable for automatic lifting panel operation. When automatic lifting panel is assembled. | | | |
| 2 R/C function setting [Service password] | Main/Sub R/C | The R/C setting of [Main/Sub] can be changed. | ○ | — |
| | Return air temp. | When two or more indoor units are connected to one unit of remote control, suction sensors, which are used for the judgement by thermostat, can be selected. • It can be selected from [Individual], [Master IU] and [Average temp]. | ○ | — |
| | R/C sensor | It can be set the mode to switch to the remote control sensor. It can be selected from cooling and heating. | ○ | △ |
| | R/C sensor adjustment | The offset value of [R/C sensor] sensing temp. can be set respectively in heating and cooling. | ○ | △ |
| | Operation mode | Enable or Disable can be set for each operation mode. Set the unit for setting temperatures. • °C or °F can be selected. | ○ | ○ |
| | Fan speed | Fan speeds can be selected. | ○ | — |
| | External input | When two or more indoor units are connected to one unit of remote control, the range to apply CnT inputs can be set. | ○ | ○ |
| | Upper/lower flap control | [Stop at fixed position] or [Stop at any position] can be selected for the upper and lower louvers. | ○ | ○ |
| | Left/right flap control | [Fixed position stop] or [Stop at any position] can be selected for the right and left louvers. | ○ | — |
| | Ventilation setting | Combination control for ventilator can be set. | ○ | ○ |
| | Auto-restart | The operation control method after recovery of power failure happened during operation can be set. | ○ | ○ |
| | Auto temp. setting | [Enable] or [Disable] of [Auto temp. setting] can be selected. | ○ | — |
| | Auto fan speed | [Enable] or [Disable] of [Auto fan speed] can be selected. | ○ | — |
| | 3 IU settings [Service password] | Fan speed setting | The fan speed for indoor units can be set. | |
| Filter sign | | The setting of filter sign display timer can be done from following patterns. | | — |
| External input 1 | | The connect of control by external input 1 can be changed. | △ | △ |
| External input 1 signal | | The type of external input 1 signal can be changed. | ○ | ○ |
| External input 2 | | The connect of control by external input 2 can be changed. | | — |
| External input 2 signal | | The type of external input 2 signal can be changed. | | — |
| Heating thermo-OFF temp. adjustment | | The judgement temp. of heating thermo-off can be adjusted within the range from 0 to +3°C (1°C interval) . | | — |
| Return temperature adjustment | | The sensing temp. of return air temp. sensor built in the indoor unit can be adjusted within the range of ±2°C. | | — |
| Fan control in cooling thermo-OFF | | Fan control, when the cooling thermostat is turned OFF, can be changed. | | — |
| Fan control in heating thermo-OFF | | Fan control, when the heating thermostat is turned OFF, can be changed. | △ | △ |
| Anti-frost temp. | | Judgment temperature for the anti-frost control during cooling can be changed. | | — |
| Anti-frost control | | When the anti-frost control of indoor unit in cooling is activated, the fan speed can be changed. | | — |
| Drain pump operation | | In any operation mode in addition to cooling and dry mode, the setting of drain pump operation can be done. | | — |
| Keep fan operating after cooling is stopped | | The time period residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in cooling mode can be set. | | — |
| Keep fan operating after heating is stopped | | The time period residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in heating mode can be set. | | — |
| Intermittent fan operation in heating | | The fan operation rule following the residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in heating mode can be set. | | — |
| Fan circulator operation | | In case that the fan is operated as the circulator, the fan control rule can be set. | | — |
| Control pressure adjust | | When only the OA processing units are operated, control pressure value can be changed. | | — |
| Auto operation mode | | The [Auto rule selection] for switching the operation mode automatically can be selected from 3 patterns. | | — |
| Thermo. rule setting | | When selecting [Outdoor air temp. control], the judgment temp can be offset by outdoor temp.. | | — |
| Auto fan speed control | Auto switching range for the auto fan speed control can be set. | | — | |
| IU overload alarm | If the difference between the setting temperature and the suction temperature becomes larger than the temperature difference set for the overload alarm, at 30 minutes after the start of operation, the overload alarm signal is transmitted from the external output (CnT-5). | ○ | — | |
| External output setting *1 | Functions assigned to the external outputs 1 to 4 can be changed. | △ | — | |

| Setting & display item | | Description | RC-EX3A | RC-E5 |
|------------------------------|--|--|---------|-------|
| 4 | Service & Maintenance | | | |
| | [Service password] | | | |
| | IU address | Max 16 indoor units can be connected to one remote control, and all address No. of the connected indoor units can be displayed. • The indoor unit conforming to the address No. can be identified by selecting the address No. and tapping [Check] to operate the indoor fan. | ○ | — |
| | Next service date | The [Next service date] can be registered. • The [Next service date] and [Company information] is displayed on the message screen. | ○ | — |
| | Operation data | The [Operation data] for indoor unit and outdoor unit can be displayed. | ○ | ○ |
| | Error display | | | |
| | Error history | The error history can be displayed. | | |
| | Display anomaly data | The operation data just before the latest error stop can be displayed. | ○ | △ |
| | Erase anomaly data | Anomaly operation data can be erased. | | |
| | Reset periodical check | The timer for the periodical check can be reset. | | |
| Saving IU settings | The I/U settings memorized in the indoor PCB connected to the remote control can be saved in the memory of the remote control. | ○ | — | |
| Special settings | [Erase IU address] [CPU reset] [Restore of default setting] [Touch panel calibration] | ○ | △ | |
| Indoor unit capacity display | Address No. and capacities of indoor units connected to the remote control are displayed. | ○ | — | |
| 8 | Contact company | Shows registered [Contact company] and [Contact phone]. | ○ | — |
| 9 | Inspection | | | |
| | Confirmation of Inspection | This is displayed when any error occurs. | ○ | — |
| 10 | PC connection | | | |
| | USB connection | Weekly timer setting and etc., can be set from PC. | ○ | — |

◆ Listed items may not function depending on the specifications of indoor and outdoor units which are combined.

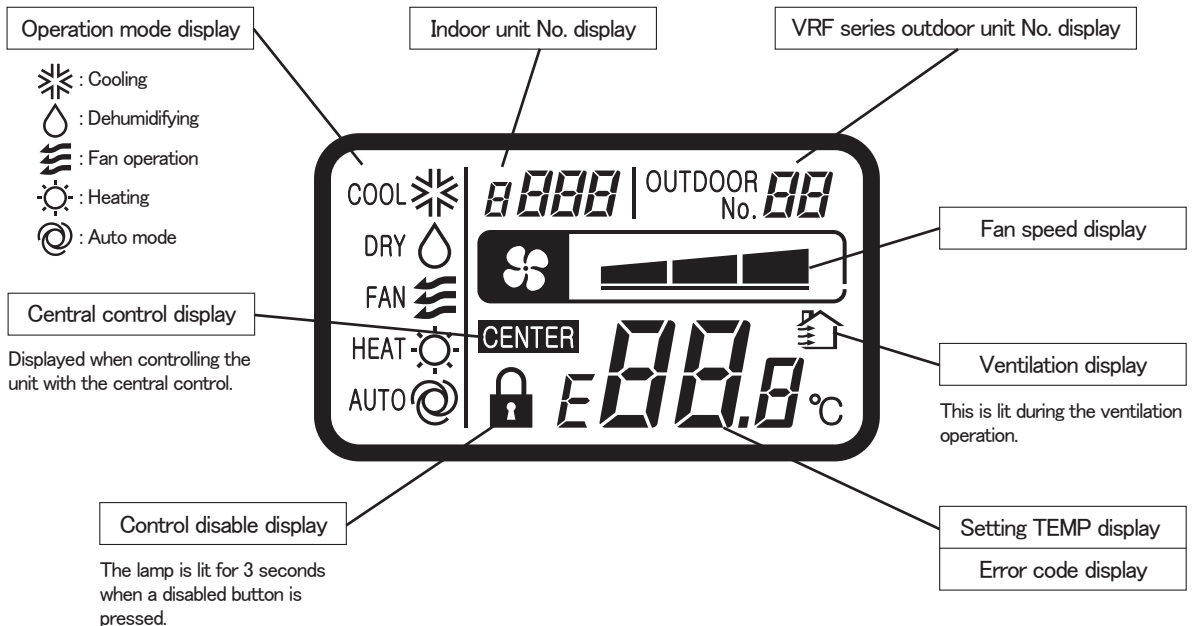
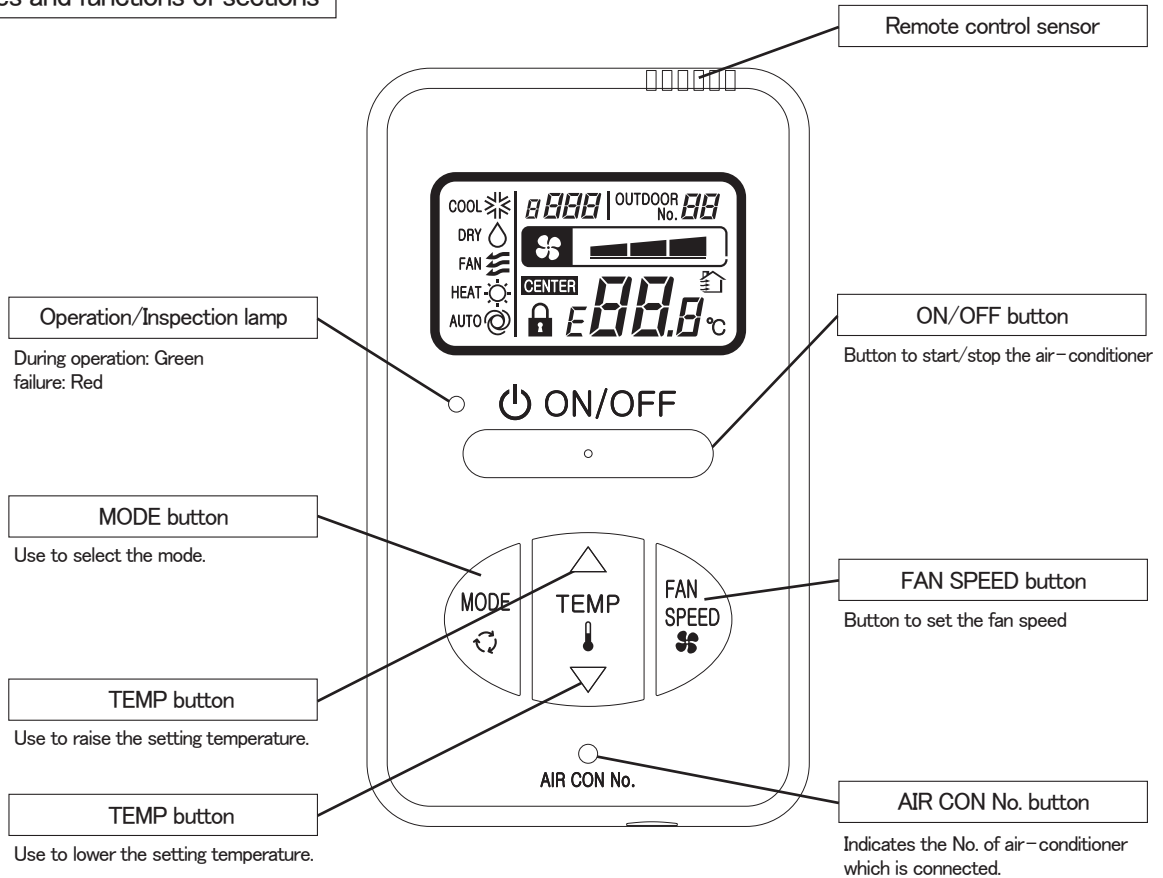
*1 It supports only following functions.

Operation output / Heating output / Compressor ON output / Inspection (Error) output / Cooling output / Fan operation output 1 / Fan operation output 2 / Fan operation output 3 / Defrost/oil return output

7.2 Simple wired remote control (RCH-E3)

PJZ000Z272

Names and functions of sections

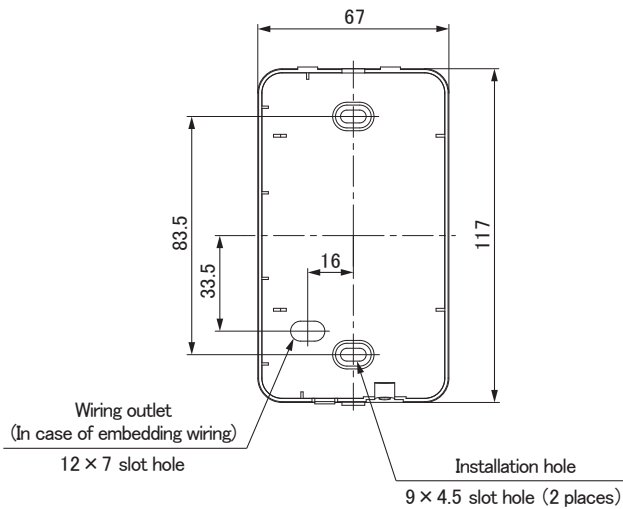


Installation of remote control

Do not install the remote control at the following places in order to avoid malfunction.

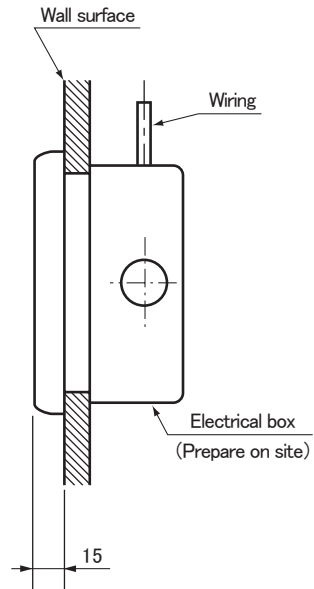
- (1) Places exposed to direct sunlight
- (2) Places near heat devices
- (3) High humidity places
- (4) Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
- (5) Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly
- (6) Uneven surface

Remote control installation dimensions

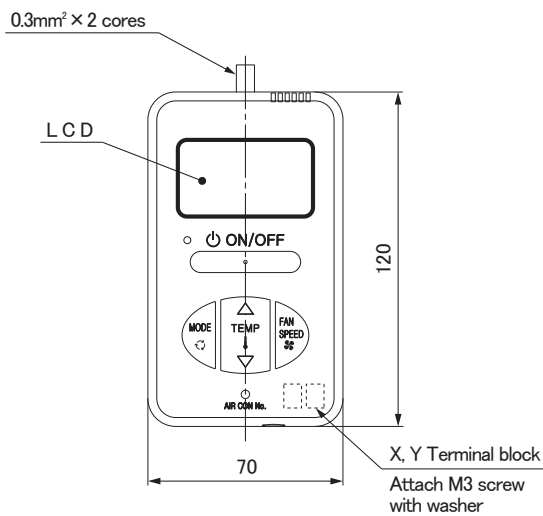


Note: Installation screw for remote control
M4 screw (2 pieces)

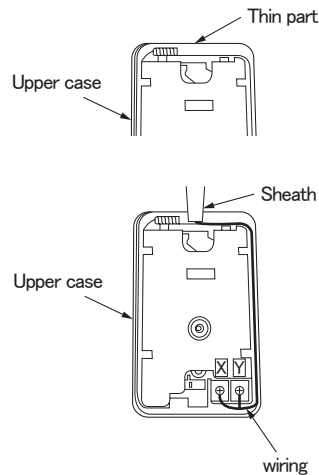
In case of embedding wiring



In case of exposing wiring

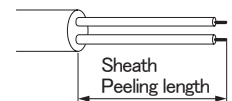


The remote control wiring can be extracted from the upper center. After the thin part in the upper side of the remote control upper case is scraped with a nipper or knife, remove burr with a file.



The peeling length of each wiring is as follows:

X wiring : 160mm
Y wiring : 150mm



Wiring specifications

- (1) Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm² × 2 cores wires or cables. (on-site configuration)
- (2) Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, the wiring in the remote control case should be 0.3mm² (recommended) to 0.5mm².
Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.

Unit:mm

| Length | Wiring thickness |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| 100 to 200m | 0.5mm ² × 2 cores |
| Under 300m | 0.75mm ² × 2 cores |
| Under 400m | 1.25mm ² × 2 cores |
| Under 600m | 2.0mm ² × 2 cores |

Adapted to **RoHS** directive

Simple Remote Control Installation Manual

PJZ012D069

Read together with indoor unit's installation manual.

WARNING

- **Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.** Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Make sure the power source is turned off when electric wiring work.** Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur.

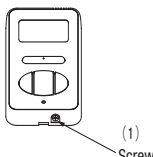
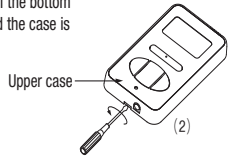
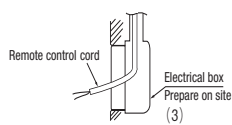
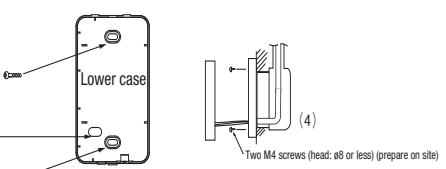
CAUTION

- **Do not install the remote control at the following places in order to avoid malfunction.**
 - (1) Places exposed to direct sunlight
 - (2) Places near heat devices
 - (3) High humidity places
 - (4) Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
 - (5) Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly
 - (6) Uneven surface
- **Do not leave the remote control without the upper case.** In case the upper case needs to be detached, protect the remote control with a packaging box or bag in order to keep it away from water and dust.

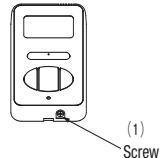
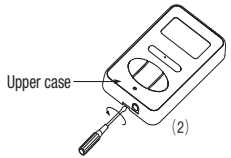
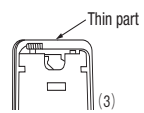
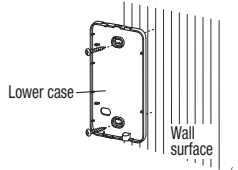
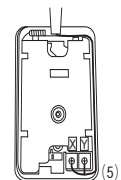
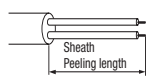
| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Accessories | Remote control, wood screw (φ 3.5 × 16) 2 pieces |
| Prepare on site | Remote control cord (2 cores) (Refer to [2. Installation and wiring of remote control]) [In case of embedding cord] Electrical box, M4 screw (2 pieces) [In case of exposing cord] Cord clamp (if needed) |

1. Installation procedure

In case of embedding cord

- (1) **Make certain to remove** the screw on the bottom surface of the remote control. 
- (2) Remove the upper case of the remote control. Insert a flat-blade screwdriver to a concave portion of the bottom surface of the remote control and slightly twist it, and the case is removed. 
- (3) Pre-bury the electrical box and remote control cord. 
- (4) Prepare two M4 screws (recommended length: 12 – 16mm), and install the lower case to the electrical box. Do not use a screw whose screw head is larger than the height of the wall around the screw hole. 
- (5) Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block. Connect the terminals (X and Y) of the remote control and the terminals (X and Y) of the indoor unit. (No polarity of X and Y)
- (6) Mount the upper case for restoring to its former state so as not to crimp the remote control cord, and secure with the removed screw.

In case of exposing cord

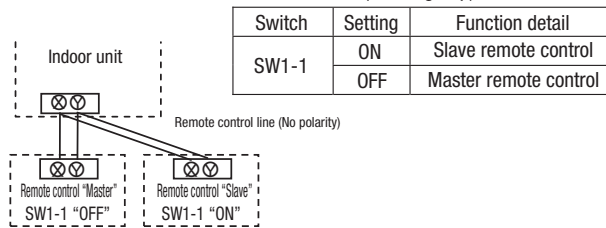
- (1) **Make certain to remove** a screw on the bottom surface of the remote control. 
 - (2) Remove the upper case of the remote control. Insert a flat-blade screwdriver to a concave portion of the bottom surface of the remote control and slightly twist it, and the case is removed. 
 - (3) The remote control cord can be extracted from the upper center. After the thin part in the upper side of the remote control upper case is scraped with a nipper or knife, remove burr with a file. 
 - (4) The lower case of the remote control is mounted to a flat wall with two accessory wood screws. 
 - (5) Connect the remote control cord to the terminal block. Connect the terminals (X and Y) of the remote control and the terminals (X and Y) of the indoor unit. (No polarity of X and Y)
The wiring route is as shown in the right. 
- The wiring in the remote control case should be 0.3 mm² (recommended) to 0.5 mm² at maximum.
Further, peel off the sheath.
The peeling length of each wiring is as follows:
- | |
|------------------|
| X wiring : 160mm |
| Y wiring : 150mm |
- 
- (6) Mount the upper case for restoring to its former state so as not to crimp the remote control cord, and secure with the removed screw.
 - (7) In the case of exposing installation, secure the remote control cord to the wall surface with a cord clamp so as not to loosen the remote control cord.

2. Installation and wiring of remote control

- (1) Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm² × 2 cores wires or cables. (on-site configuration)
- (2) Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, the wiring in the remote control case should be 0.3mm² (recommended) to 0.5mm².
Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.
 - 100 - 200m ······ 0.5mm² × 2 cores
 - Under 300m ······ 0.75mm² × 2 cores
 - Under 400m ······ 1.25mm² × 2 cores
 - Under 600m ······ 2.0mm² × 2 cores

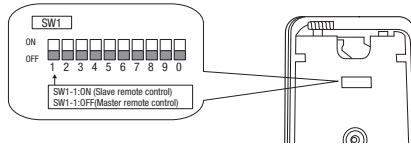
3. Master/ slave setting when more than one remote control are used

- (1) Up to two remote controls can be connected to one unit (or one group) of indoor unit.



- (2) Set the switch SW1-1 of the slave remote control is "Slave" (ON). The factory default is set as "Master" (OFF).

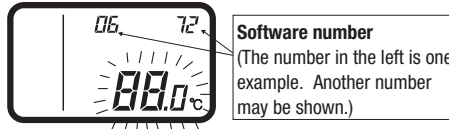
- (Note) • The remote control thermistor enabled setting can be set only to the master remote control.
- Install the master remote control at the position to detect room temperature.
 - The air-conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control in case of the master / slave setting.



4. The indication when power source is supplied

- (1) At the time of turning the power source on, after the light is on for the first 2 seconds, the display becomes as shown below.

The number displayed on the upper side of LCD in the remote control is the software number, and this is not an error code.



Software number
(The number in the left is one example. Another number may be shown.)

- (2) Then, "88.0 °C" blinks on the remote control until the communication between the remote control and the indoor unit is established.
- (3) In the case of connecting one remote control with one unit (or one group) of indoor unit, make certain to set the master remote control (factory default). If the slave remote control is set, a communication cannot be established.
- (4) If a state where the communication between the remote control and the indoor unit cannot be established continues about for 30 minutes, "E" is displayed. Confirm the wiring of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit and master/slave setting of the remote control.



5. Confirmation method for return air temperature

Return air temperature can be confirmed by the remote control operation.

- (1) Press **AIR CON No.** button for over 5 seconds.

"88" blinks on the temperature setting indicator.
("88" blinks for approximately 2 seconds while data are read.)



Then, the return air temperature is displayed.

(Example) return air temperature: "27 °C" (blinking)

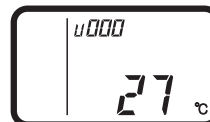
(Note) For the return air temperature, in the normal case, the return air temperature of the indoor unit is displayed; however, in the case that the remote control thermistor is effective, detected temperature by the remote control thermistor is displayed.

- (2) Press **ON/OFF** button.
End.

[In the case that the remote thermistor is ineffective and plural indoor units are connected to one remote control]

- (1) Press **AIR CON No.** button for over 5 seconds.

Indoor unit No. indicator: "U 000" (blinking)
(Among the connected indoor units, the lowest number is displayed.)



- (2) Press **TEMP** or **TEMP** button.

Select the indoor unit No.

- (3) Press **MODE** button.

Decider the indoor unit No.

(Example) Indoor unit No. indicator: "U 000"

"88" blinks on the temperature setting indicator. (blinking for approximately 2 to 10 seconds while data are read) Then, the return air temperature is displayed. When **AIR CON No.** is pressed, return to the indoor unit selection display (example, "U 000").

- (4) Press **ON/OFF** button.
End.

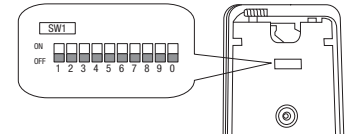
6. Function setting

Each function of the remote control and the indoor unit is automatically set to the initial setting, which is the standard use, on the occasion of connecting the remote control with the indoor unit. In the case of the standard use, the setting change is unnecessary. However, if you would like to change the initial setting "○", change the setting for only the item of the function number. **Record the setting contents and stored them.**

(1) Function setting item by switch on PCB

| Switch No. | Setting | Setting detail | Initial setting |
|------------|---------|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| SW1-1 | ON | Slave remote control | |
| | OFF | Master remote control | ○ |
| SW1-2 | ON | Remote control thermistor enabled | |
| | OFF | Remote control thermistor disabled | ○ |
| SW1-3 | ON | "MODE" button prohibited | |
| | OFF | "MODE" button enabled | ○ |
| SW1-4 | ON | "ON/OFF" button prohibited | |
| | OFF | "ON/OFF" button enabled | ○ |

| Switch No. | Setting | Setting detail | Initial setting |
|-------------|---------|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| SW1-5 | ON | "TEMP" button prohibited | |
| | OFF | "TEMP" button enabled | ○ |
| SW1-6 | ON | "FAN SPEED" button prohibited | ※ Note 1 |
| | OFF | "FAN SPEED" button enabled | ※ Note 1 |
| SW1-7 | ON | Auto restart function enabled | |
| | OFF | Auto restart function disabled | ○ |
| SW1-8, 9, 0 | ON | Not used | |
| | OFF | Not used | |



- As for the slave remote control, function setting is impossible other than SW1-1.
- In the indoor unit with only one fan speed, "FAN SPEED" button cannot be enabled.

(2) Function setting item by button operation

| Classification | Function No. | Function | Setting No. | Setting | Initial setting | Remark |
|-------------------------|---|--|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| Remote control function | 01 | Indoor unit fan speed | 01 | Fan speed: three steps | ※ Note 1 | The fan speed is three steps, ☼■●-☼■●-☼■● . |
| | | | 02 | Fan speed: two steps (Hi-Lo) | ※ Note 1 | The fan speed is two steps, ☼■●-☼■● . |
| | | | 03 | Fan speed: two steps (Hi-Me) | | The fan speed is two steps, ☼■●-☼■● . |
| | | | 04 | Fan: one step | ※ Note 1 | The fan speed is fixed to one step. |
| | 03 | Remote control thermistor at the time of cooling | 01 | Remote control thermistor: no offset | ○ | |
| | | | 02 | Remote control thermistor: +3.0 °C | | At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at +3.0°C. |
| | | | 03 | Remote control thermistor: +2.0 °C | | At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at +2.0°C. |
| | | | 04 | Remote control thermistor: +1.0 °C | | At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at +1.0°C. |
| | | | 05 | Remote control thermistor: -1.0 °C | | At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at -1.0°C. |
| | | | 06 | Remote control thermistor: -2.0 °C | | At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at -2.0°C. |
| | | | 07 | Remote control thermistor: -3.0 °C | | At the time of cooling, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at -3.0°C. |
| | 04 | Remote control thermistor at the time of heating | 01 | Remote control thermistor: no offset | ○ | |
| | | | 02 | Remote control thermistor: +3.0 °C | | At the time of heating, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at +3.0°C. |
| | | | 03 | Remote control thermistor: +2.0 °C | | At the time of heating, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at +2.0°C. |
| 04 | | | Remote control thermistor: +1.0 °C | | At the time of heating, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at +1.0°C. | |
| 05 | | | Remote control thermistor: -1.0 °C | | At the time of heating, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at -1.0°C. | |
| 06 | | | Remote control thermistor: -2.0 °C | | At the time of heating, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at -2.0°C. | |
| 07 | | | Remote control thermistor: -3.0 °C | | At the time of heating, in the case of remote control thermistor enabled, offset temperature at -3.0°C. | |
| 05 | Ventilation setting | 01 | No ventilator connection | ○ | | |
| | | 02 | Ventilator links air-conditioner | | In case of Single split series, by connecting ventilation device to CnT of the indoor printed circuit board (in case of VRF series, by connecting it to CnD of the indoor printed circuit board), the operation of ventilation device is linked with the operation of indoor unit. | |
| 06 | "Auto" operation setting | 01 | "Auto" operation enabled | ※ Note 1 | | |
| | | 02 | "Auto" operation disabled | ※ Note 1 | "Auto" operation disabled | |
| Indoor unit function | 07 | Operation permission/prohibition | 01 | Disabled | ○ | |
| | | | 02 | Enabled | | Operation permission/prohibition control is enabled. |
| | 08 | External input | 01 | Level input | ○ | |
| | | | 02 | Pulse input | | |
| | 09 | Fan speed setting | 01 | Standard | Note2 | |
| | | | 02 | High speed 1 | Note2 | |
| | | | 03 | High speed 2 | Note2 | |
| | 10 | Fan remaining operation at the time of cooling | 01 | No remaining operation | ○ | After cooling stopped, no fan remaining operation |
| | | | 02 | 0.5 hours | | After cooling stopped, fan remaining operation for 0.5 hours |
| | | | 03 | 1 hour | | After cooling stopped, fan remaining operation for 1 hour |
| | | | 04 | 6 hours | | After cooling stopped, fan remaining operation for 6 hours |
| | 11 | Fan remaining operation at the time of heating | 01 | No remaining operation | ○ | After heating stopped or after heating thermostat OFF, no fan remaining operation |
| | | | 02 | 0.5 hours | | After heating stopped or after heating thermostat OFF, fan remaining operation for 0.5 hours |
| | | | 03 | 2 hours | | After heating stopped or after heating thermostat OFF, fan remaining operation for 2 hours |
| 04 | | | 6 hours | | After heating stopped or after heating thermostat OFF, fan remaining operation for 6 hours | |
| 12 | Setting temperature offset at the time of heating | 01 | No offset | ○ | | |
| | | 02 | Setting temperature offset + 3.0 °C | | The setting temperature at the time of heating is offset by +3.0 °C. | |
| | | 03 | Setting temperature offset + 2.0 °C | | The setting temperature at the time of heating is offset by +2.0 °C. | |
| | | 04 | Setting temperature offset + 1.0 °C | | The setting temperature at the time of heating is offset by +1.0 °C. | |
| 13 | Heating fan controller | 01 | Low fan speed | ※ Note 1 | At the time of heating thermostat OFF, operate with low fan speed. | |
| | | 02 | Setting fan speed | | At the time of heating thermostat OFF, operate with the setting fan speed. | |
| | | 03 | Intermittent operation | ※ Note 1 | At the time of heating thermostat OFF, intermittently operate. | |
| | | 04 | Fan off | | At the time of heating thermostat OFF, a fan will be stopped. When the remote control thermistor is enabled, automatically set to "Fan off". Do not set at the time of the indoor unit thermistor. | |
| 14 | Return air temperature offset | 01 | No offset | ○ | | |
| | | 02 | Return air temperature offset +2.0 °C | | Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by +2.0 °C. | |
| | | 03 | Return air temperature offset +1.5 °C | | Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by +1.5 °C. | |
| | | 04 | Return air temperature offset +1.0 °C | | Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by +1.0 °C. | |
| | | 05 | Return air temperature offset -1.0 °C | | Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by -1.0 °C. | |
| | | 06 | Return air temperature offset -1.5 °C | | Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by -1.5 °C. | |
| | | 07 | Return air temperature offset -2.0 °C | | Offset the return air temperature of the indoor unit by -2.0 °C. | |

Note 1: The symbol "※" in the initial setting varies depending upon the indoor unit and the outdoor unit to be connected, and this is automatically determined as follows.

| Switch No. / Function No. | Function | Setting | Product model |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| SW1-6 | "FAN SPEED" button | "FAN SPEED" button prohibited | Product model whose indoor fan speed is only one step |
| | | "FAN SPEED" button enabled | Product model whose indoor fan speed is two steps or three steps |
| Remote control function 01 | Indoor unit fan speed | Fan speed: three steps | Product model whose indoor unit fan speed is three steps |
| | | Fan speed: two steps (Hi-Lo) | Product model whose indoor unit fan speed is two steps |
| | | Fan: one step | Product model whose indoor unit fan speed is only one step |
| Remote control function 06 | "Auto" operation setting | "Auto" operation enabled | Product model where "Auto" mode is selectable |
| | | "Auto" operation disabled | Product model without "Auto" mode |
| Indoor unit function 13 | Heating fan control | Low fan speed | Product model except FDUS |
| | | Intermittent operation | FDUS |

Note 2: Fan speed of "High speed" setting

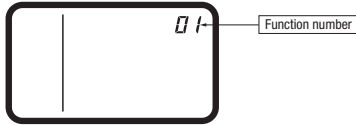
| Fan speed setting | Indoor unit fan speed setting | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Standard | ☼■●-☼■●-☼■● | ☼■●-☼■● | ☼■●-☼■● |
| High speed 1・2 | UHi - Hi - Mid | UHi - Mid | Hi - Mid |

Initial setting of some indoor unit is "High speed".

Note 3: As for plural indoor unit, set indoor functions to each master and slave indoor unit. But only master indoor unit is received the setting change of indoor unit function "07 Operation permission/prohibition" and "08 External input".

7. How to set functions by button operation

- Stop air-conditioning, and simultaneously press **AIR CON No.** and **MODE** buttons at the same time for over three seconds.
The function number "01" blinks in the upper right.

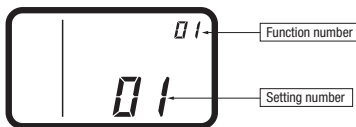


- Press **TEMP▲** or **TEMP▼** button.
Select the function number.

- Press **MODE** button.
Decide the function number.

- [In the case of selecting the remote control function (01-06)]**

- The current setting number of the selected function number blinks (Example)
Function number: "01" (lighting)
Setting number: "01" (blinking)



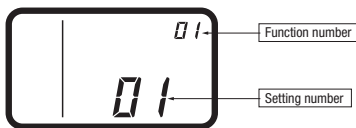
- Press **TEMP▲** or **TEMP▼** button.
Select the setting number.

- Press **MODE** button.
The setting is completed.

Light is on for approximately 3 to 20 seconds while data of the decided function No. and setting No. is transmitted.

(Example)

Function number: "01" (lighting for 3 to 20 seconds)
Setting number: "01" (lighting for 3 to 20 seconds)



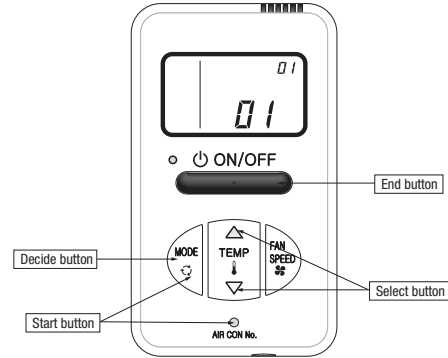
Then, the screen goes back to the function number blinking indication (1), if the setting is sequentially conducted, continue with the same procedures. If the setting is finished, proceed to (5).

- Press **ON/OFF** button.
The setting is completed.

- Even if **ON/OFF** button is pressed during setting, the setting is ended. However, any details where the setting has not been completed will be ineffective.
- The setting contents are stored in the control, and even if the power failure occur, this will not be lost.

[Confirmation method for current setting]

According to the operation, the "setting number" displayed first after selecting "function number" and pressing **MODE** button is the currently set content. (However, in the case of selecting "U ALL" (all units), the setting number of the lowest number among the indoor units is displayed.)



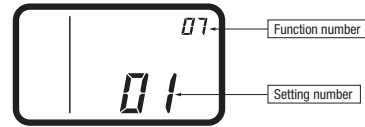
[In the case of selecting the indoor unit function (07-14)]

- "88" blinks on the temperature setting indicators.
(blinking for approximately 2 to 10 seconds while data are read)



After that, the current setting number of the selected function number blinks. (Example)

Function number: "07" (lighting)
Setting number: "01" (blinking)

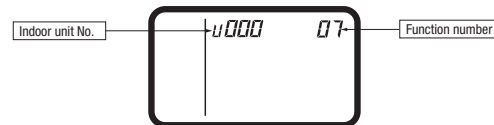


Proceed to (2).

[Note]

- In the case of connecting one remote control to plural indoor units, the display will be as follows:

Indoor unit No. display: "U 000" (blinking)
(Display the lowest number among the connected indoor units.)



- Press **TEMP▲** or **TEMP▼** button.

Select the indoor unit No. to be set.
If "U ALL" is selected, the same setting can be set to all units.

- Press **MODE** button.

Decide the indoor unit No.
"88" blinks on the temperature setting indicators. (blinking for 2 to 10 seconds while data are read)

When **AIR CON No.** button is pressed, go back to the indoor unit selection display (for example, "U 000" blinking).

- Press **TEMP▲** or **TEMP▼** button.

Select the setting number

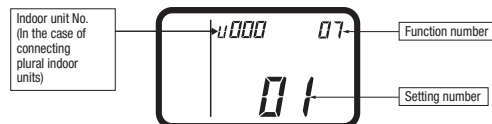
- Press **MODE** button.

The setting is completed.

Light is on for approximately 3 to 20 seconds while data of the decided function No. and setting No. is transmitted.

(Example)

Indoor unit No.: "U 000" (lighting for 3 to 20 seconds)
Function number: "07" (lighting for 3 to 20 seconds)
Setting number: "01" (lighting for 3 to 20 seconds)



Then, the screen goes back to the function number blinking indication (1), if the setting is sequentially conducted, continue with the same procedures. If the setting is finished, proceed to (5).

7.3 Interface kit (SC-BIKN2-E)

RKZ012A099

※ When RC-EX3A is connected, please use SC-BIKN2-E by all means.

Accessories included in package

Be sure to check all the accessories included in package.

| No. | Part name | Quantity |
|-----|---|----------|
| ① | Indoor unit's connection cable (cable length: 1.8m) | 1 |
| ② | Wood screws (for mounting the interface: ø4x 25) | 2 |
| ③ | Tapping screws (for the cable clamp and the interface mounting bracket) | 3 |
| ④ | Interface mounting bracket | 1 |
| ⑤ | Cable clamp (for the indoor unit's connection cable) | 1 |
| ⑥ | CnT terminal connection cable (total cable length: 0.5m) | 1 |

Safety precautions

Before use, please read these Safety precautions thoroughly before installation.

- All the cautionary items mentioned below are important safety related items to be taken into consideration, so be sure to observe them at all times.

Warning Incorrect installation could lead to serious consequences such as death, major injury or environmental destruction.

- Symbols used in these precautions

! Always go along these instruction.

- After completed installation, carry out trial operation to confirm no anomaly, and ask the user to keep this installation manual in a good place for future reference.

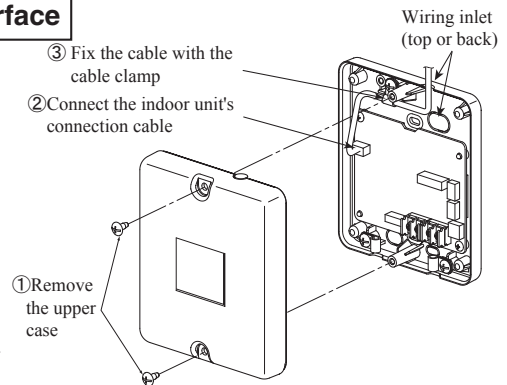
Warnings



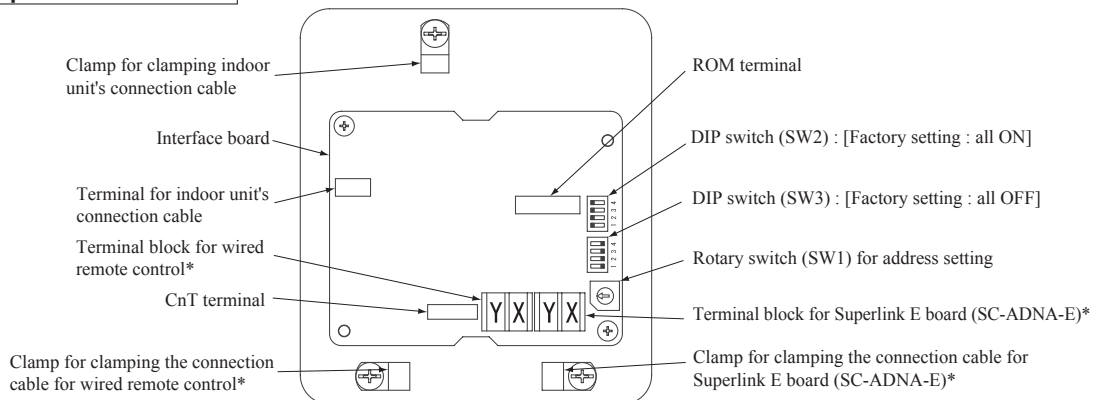
- **Installation must be carried out by a qualified installer.**
If you install it by yourself, it may cause an electric shock, fire and personal injury, as a result of a system malfunction.
- **Install it in full accordance with the installation manual.**
Incorrect installation may cause an electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Electrical work must be carried out by a qualified electrician in accordance with the technical standard for electrical equipment, the indoor wiring standard and this installation manual.**
Incorrect installation may cause an electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Use the specific cables for wiring. And connect all the cables to terminals or connectors securely and clamp them with cable clamps in order for external forces not to be transmitted to the terminals directly.**
Incomplete connection may cause malfunction, and lead to heat generation and fire.
- **Use the original accessories and specified components for installation.**
If the parts other than those prescribed by us are used, it may cause an electric shock, fire and personal injury.

Connecting the indoor unit's connection cable to the interface

- Remove the upper case of the interface.
 - Remove 2 screws from the interface casing before removal of upper casing.
- Connect the indoor unit's connection cable to the interface.
 - Connect the connector of the indoor unit connection cable to the connector on the interface's circuit board.
- Fix the indoor unit's connection cable with the cable clamp.
 - Cable can be brought in from the top or from the back.
 - Cut out the punch-outs for the connection cables running into the casing with cutter.
- Connect the indoor unit's connection cable to the indoor control PCB.
 - Connect the indoor unit's connection cable to the indoor control PCB securely.
 - Clamp the connection cable to the indoor control box securely with the cable clamp provided as an accessory.
 - Regarding the cable connection to the indoor unit, refer to the installation manual for indoor unit.



Name of each part of the interface



*Either the connection cables of Superlink E board (SC-ADNA-E) or of wired remote control is connectable.

| Switch | Setting | Function | Switch | Setting | Function |
|--------|---------|--------------------------------|--------|---------|--|
| SW2-1 | ON** | CnT level input | SW2-3 | ON** | External input (CnT input) |
| | OFF | CnT pulse input | | OFF | Operation permission/prohibition (CnT input) |
| SW2-2 | ON** | Wired remote control : Enable | SW2-4 | ON** | Annual cooling : Enable*** |
| | OFF | Wired remote control : Disable | | OFF | Annual cooling : Disable*** |

** Factory setting

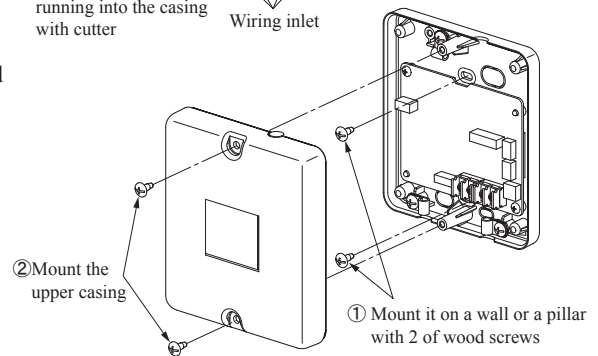
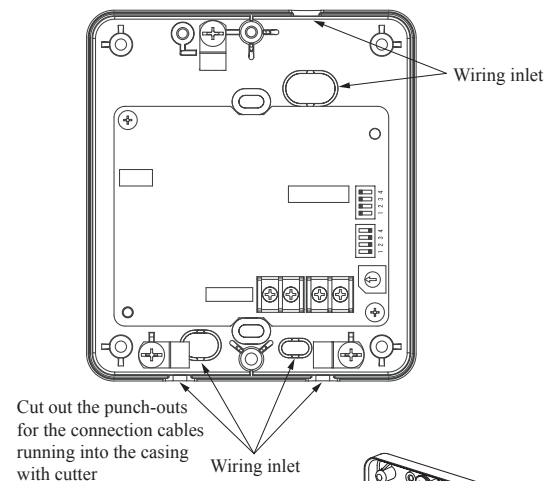
*** Indoor fan control at low outdoor air temperature in cooling

Installation of the interface

- Install the interface within the range of the connection cable length (approximately 1.3m) from the indoor unit.
 - Be sure not to extend the connection cable on site. If the connection cable is extended, malfunction may occur.
 - Fix the interface on the wall, pillar or the like.
- Don't install the interface and wired remote control at the following places.
- Places exposed to direct sunlight
 - Places near heating devices
 - High humidity places
 - Surfaces where are enough hot or cold to generate condensation
 - Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly
 - Uneven surface

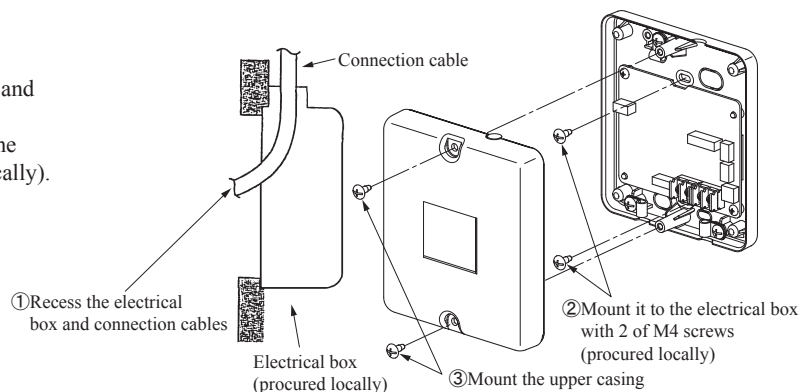
Mounting the interface directly on a wall

- ① Mount the lower casing of the interface on a flat surface with wood screws provided as standard accessory.
- ② Mount the upper casing.



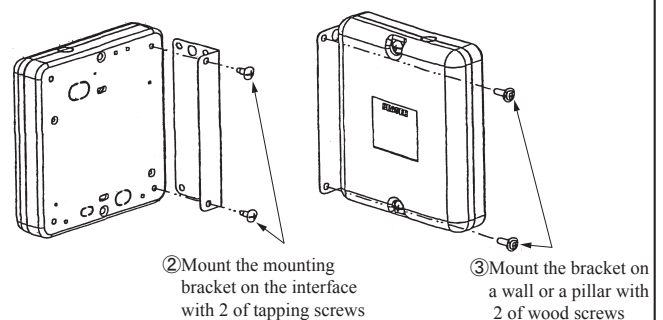
Recessing the interface in the wall

- ① Recess the electrical box (procured locally) and connection cables in the wall.
- ② Mount the lower casing of the interface to the electrical box with M4 screws (procured locally).
- ③ Mount the upper casing.



Mounting the interface with the mounting bracket

- ① Mount the upper casing.
- ② Mount the mounting bracket to the interface with tapping screws provided as standard accessory.
- ③ Mount the mounting bracket on wall or the like with wood screws provided as standard accessory.



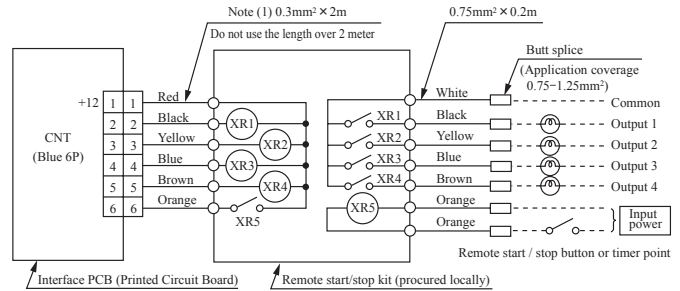
Installation check items

- Are the connection cables connected securely to the terminal blocks and connectors?
- Are the thickness and length of the connection cables conformed with the standard?

Functions of CnT connector

It is available to operate the air-conditioner and to monitor the operation status with the external control unit (remote display) by sending the input/output signal through CnT connector on the indoor control PCB.

- ① Connect a external remote control unit (procured locally) to CnT terminal.
- ② In case of the pulse input, switch OFF the DIP switch SW2-1 on the interface PCB.
- ③ When setting operation permission/prohibition mode, switch OFF the DIP switch SW2-3 on the interface PCB.



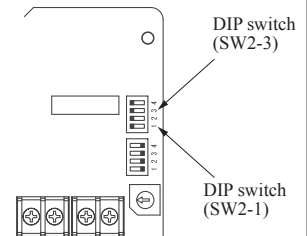
| Input/Output | Function | Output signal | | Content |
|--------------|-----------------------------|---------------|--------|----------------------------------|
| | | Relay | ON/OFF | |
| Output 1 | Operation output | XR1 | ON | During air-conditioner operation |
| Output 2 | Heating output | XR2 | ON | During heating operation |
| Output 3 | Compressor operation output | XR3 | ON | During compressor running |
| Output 4 | Malfunction output | XR4 | ON | During anomalous stop |

- XR1-4 are for the DC 12V relay
- XR5 is a DC 12/24V or AC 220-240V relay
- CnT connector (local) maker, model

| | | |
|-----------|-------|---------|
| Connector | Molex | 5264-06 |
| Terminals | Molex | 5263T |

| Input/Output | Function | SW2-1 | | SW2-3 | | Air-conditioner | Operation by remote control | | | |
|--------------|------------------------|---------|-------------|--------------|-------------|------------------|---|----------------|-------------|-------------|
| | | Setting | | Input signal | Content | | | | | |
| Input | External control input | ON* | Level input | ON* | | Level | OFF→ON ON→OFF | External input | ON OFF | Allowed |
| | | | | OFF | Level | OFF→ON ON→OFF | Operation permission Operation prohibition | OFF OFF | Not allowed | |
| | | | | OFF | Pulse input | ON* | Pulse | OFF→ON | | |
| | | OFF | Pulse input | OFF | Level | OFF→ON ON→OFF | Operation permission Operation prohibition | ON OFF | ON OFF | Not allowed |

* Factory setting



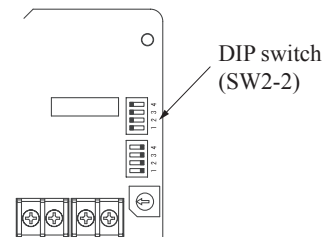
In case of the remote control (RC-EX3 or later model), the external outputs (1 – 4) and the external input can be changed using the function setting of remote control. For the setting method, refer to the installation manual. Also refer to the technical manual to know how it is adapted to the function setting for the external outputs and input, at the indoor unit side.

Connection of Superlink E board

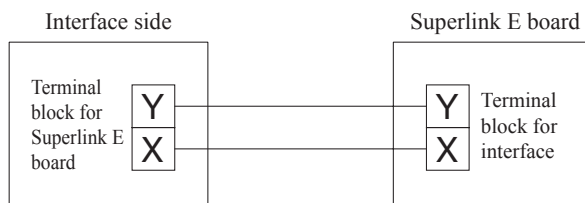
Regarding the connection of Superlink E board, refer to the installation manual of Superlink E board.

For electrical work, power source for all of units in the Superlink system must be turned OFF.

- ① Switch ON the DIP switch SW2-2 (Factory setting: ON) on the interface PCB.
Caution: Wireless remote control attached to the indoor unit can be used in parallel, after connecting the wired remote control. However, some of functions other than the basic functions such as RUN/STOP, temperature setting, etc. may not work properly and may have a mismatch between the display and the actual behavior.



- ② Wiring connection between the interface and the Superlink E board.



| No. | Names of recommended signal wires |
|-----|---|
| 1 | Shielded wire |
| 2 | Vinyl cabtyre round cord |
| 3 | Vinyl cabtyre round cable |
| 4 | Vinyl insulated wire vinyl sheathed cable for control |

Within 200 m 0.5 mm² × 2 cores
 Within 300 m 0.75 mm² × 2 cores
 Within 400 m 1.25 mm² × 2 cores
 Within 600 m 2.0 mm² × 2 cores

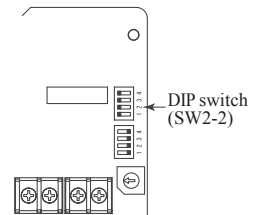
- ③ Clamp the connection cables with cable clamps.

Connection of wired remote control

Regarding the connection of wired remote control, refer to the installation manual of wired remote control.

- Switch ON the DIP switch SW2-2 (Factory setting : ON) on the interface PCB.

Caution: Wireless remote control attached to the indoor unit can be used in parallel, after connecting the wired remote control. However, some of functions other than the basic functions such as RUN/STOP, temperature setting, etc. may not work properly and may have a mismatch between the display and the actual behavior.



- Wiring connection between the interface and the wired remote control.

Installation and wiring of wired remote control

- Install the wired remote control with reference to the attached installation manual of wired remote control.

- 0.3mm² × 2 cores cable should be used for the wiring of wired remote control.

- Maximum length of wiring is 600m.

If the length of wiring exceeds 100m, change the size of cable as mentioned below.

100m-200m: 0.5mm² × 2 cores, 300m or less: 0.75mm² × 2 cores, 400m or less: 1.25mm² × 2 cores, 600m or less: 2.0mm² × 2 cores

However, cable size connecting to the terminal of wired remote control should not exceed 0.5mm². Accordingly if the size of connection cable exceeds 0.5mm², be sure to downsize it to 0.5mm² at the nearest section of the wired remote control and waterproof treatment should be done at the connecting section in order to avoid contact failure.

- Don't use the multi-core cable to avoid malfunction.

- Keep the wiring of wired remote control away from grounding (Don't touch it to any metal frame of building, etc.).

- Connect the connection cables to the terminal blocks of the wired remote control and the interface securely (No polarity).

- Clamp the connection cables with cable clamps.

Control of multiple units by a single wired remote control

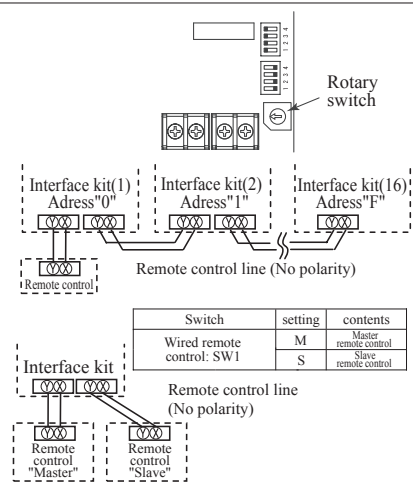
Multiple units (up to 16) can be controlled by a single wired remote control. In this case, all units connected with a single wired remote control will operate under the same mode and same setting temperature.

- Connect all the interface with 2 cores cables of wired remote control line.

- Set the address of indoor unit for remote control communication from "0" to "F" with the rotary switch SW1 on the interface PCB.

- After turning the power ON, the address of indoor unit can be displayed by pressing [AIR CON No.] button on the wired remote control.

Make sure all indoor units connected are displayed in order by pressing or button.



Master/Slave setting wired when 2 of wired remote control are used

Maximum two wired remote control can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units)

- Set the DIP switch SW1 on the wired remote control to "Slave" for the slave remote control. (Factory setting : Master)

Caution : Remote control sensor of the slave remote control is invalid.

- When using the wireless remote control in parallel with the wired remote control;

Since temperature setting range of wired remote control is different from that of wireless remote control, please adjust the setting range of wired remote control to be the same setting range of wireless remote control by following procedure. (The set temperature may not be displayed correctly on the wireless remote control, unless change of temperature setting range is done.)

Changing procedure of temperature setting range is as follows.

How to set upper and lower limit of temperature setting range

- Stop the air-conditioner, and press (SET) and (MODE) button at the same time for 3 seconds or more.

The indication changes to "FUNCTION SET ▼"

- Press button once, and change to the "TEMP RANGE ▲" indication.

- Press (SET) button, and enter the temperature range setting mode.

- Confirm that the "Upper limit ▼" is shown on the display.

- Press (SET) button to fix.

- ① Indication: "UPPER 28°C ▼"

② Select the upper limit value 30°C with temperature setting button . "UPPER 30°C ▼" (blinking)

- ③ Press (SET) button to fix. "UPPER 30°C" (Displayed for two seconds)

After the fixed upper limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "UPPER LIMIT ▼".

- Press button once, "LOWER LIMIT ▲" is selected, press (SET) button to fix.

- ① Indication: "LOWER 20°C ▲"

② Select the lower limit value 18°C with temperature setting button . "LOWER 18°C ▲" (blinking)

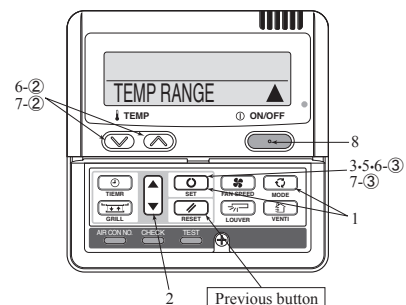
- ③ Press (SET) button to fix. "LOWER 18°C" (Displayed for two seconds)

After the fixed lower limit value displayed for two seconds, the indication will return to "LOWER LIMIT ▼"

- Press [ON/OFF] button to finish.

Temperature setting range

| Mode | Temperature setting range |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Cooling, Heating, Dry, Auto | 18-30°C |



- It is possible to quit in the middle by pressing [ON/OFF] button, but the change of setting is incompleting.
- During setting, if pressing [RESET] button, it returns to the previous screen.

7.4 Superlink E board (SC-ADNA-E)

PJZ012D029K 

- Read and understand the instructions completely before starting installation.
- Refer to the instructions for both indoor and outdoor units.

Safety precautions

- Carefully read “Safety precautions” first. Follow the instructions for installation.
- Precautions are grouped into “Warning⚠” and “Caution⚠”. The “Warning⚠” group includes items that may lead to serious injury or death if not observed. The items included in the “Caution⚠” group also may lead to serious results under certain conditions. Both groups are crucial for safety installation. Read and understand them carefully.
- After installation, conduct the test operation of the device to check for any abnormalities. Describe how to operate the device to the customer following the installation instruction manual. Instruct the customer to keep this installation instruction for future reference.

⚠Warning

- This device should be installed by the dealer where you purchase the device or a licensed professional shop. If the device is incorrectly installed by the customer, it may result in electric shock or fire.
- Install the device carefully following the installation instruction. If the device is incorrectly installed, it may result in electric shock or fire.
- Use the accessory parts and specified parts for installation. If any parts that do not match the specifications are used, it may result in electric shock or fire.
- A person with the electrical service certification should conduct the service based on the “Technical standards for electrical facilities”, “Electrical Wiring Code”, and the installation instruction. If the work is done incorrectly, it may result in electric shock or fire.
- Wiring should be securely connected using the specified types of wire. No external force on the wire should be applied to any terminals. If a secure connection is not achieved, it may result in electric shock or fire.

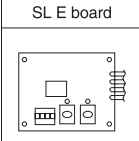
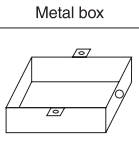
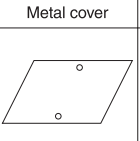
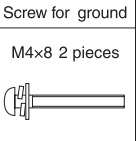
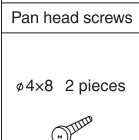
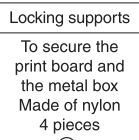
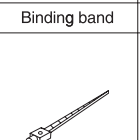
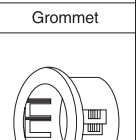


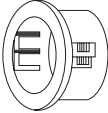
⚠Caution

- Provide ground connection.
The ground line should never be connected to the gas supply piping, the water supply piping, the lightning conductor rod, nor the telephone ground. If the grounding is improper, it may result in electric shock.
- Do not install the device in the following locations.
 1. Where there is mist/spray of oil or steam such as kitchens.
 2. Where there is corrosive gases such as sulfurous acid gas.
 3. Where there is a device generating electromagnetic waves.
These may interfere with the control system resulting in the device becoming uncontrollable.
 4. Where flammable volatile materials such as paint thinner and gasoline may exist or where they are handled. This may cause a fire.

1 Application

Indoor-to-outdoor three core communication specification type 3 (since October 2007)

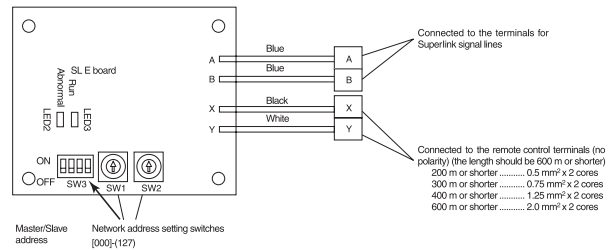
2 Accessories

| | | | |
|---|---|---|--|
|  |  |  |  M4x8 2 pieces |
|  |  |  |  |
| <p>∅4x8 2 pieces</p> | <p>To secure the print board and the metal box Made of nylon 4 pieces</p>  |  |  |

5 Connection outline

Note for setting the address

- Set the address between 00 and 47 for the previous Superlink connection and between 000 and 127 for the new Superlink connection. (*1)
- Do not set the address overlapping with those of the other devices in the network. (The default is 000)



(*1) Whether the actual link is either the new Superlink or the previous Superlink depends on the models of the connected outdoor and indoor units. Consult the agent or the dealer.

3 Function

Allowing the central control SL1N-E, SL2NA-E, and SL4-AE/BE to control and monitor the commercial air-conditioner unit.

4 Control switching

Settings can be changed by the DIP switch SW3 on the SL E board as in the following.

| Switch | Symbol | Switch | Remarks |
|--------|--------|---------------|---|
| SW3 | 1 | ON | Master |
| | | OFF (default) | Slave |
| | 2 | ON | Fixed previous protocol |
| | | OFF (default) | Automatic adjustment of Superlink protocol |
| | 3 | ON | Indicates the forced operation stop when abnormality has occurred. |
| | | OFF (default) | Indicates the status of running/stop as it is, when abnormality has occurred. |
| | 4 | ON | The hundredth address activated “1” |
| | | OFF (default) | The hundredth address activated “0” |


Signal line specification

| Communication method | Previous Superlink | New Superlink |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Line type | MVVS | MVVS |
| Line diameter | 0.75 - 1.25mm ² | 0.75/1.25mm ² |
| Signal line (total length) | up to 1000m | up to 1500/1000m (*2) |
| Signal line (maximum length) | up to 1000m | up to 1000m |

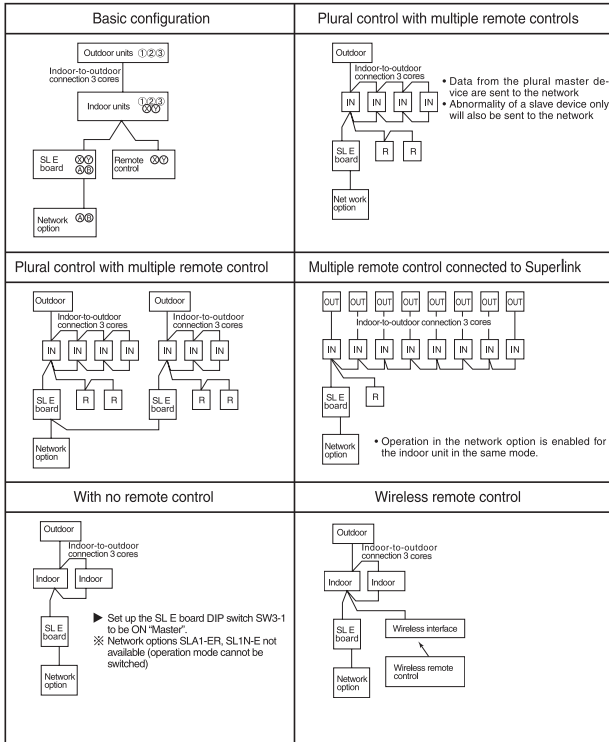
(*2) Up to 1500m for 0.75 mm², and up to 1000m for 1.25 mm².

Do not use 2.0 mm². It may cause an error.

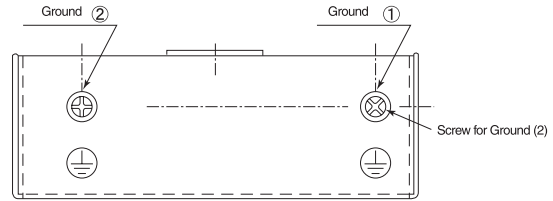
(*3) Connect grounding on both ends of the shielding wire.

For the grounding method, refer to the section “ Installation”.

- (1) Set the Superlink network address with SW1 (tens place), SW2 (ones place), and SW3 (hundreds place).
- (2) Set the SL E board SW3-1 to be ON (Master) when using this without any remote control (no wired remote controller nor wireless remote control).
- (3) Set up the plural master/slave device using the DIP switches on the indoor unit board.
- (4) Set up the remote control master/slave device using the slide switch on the remote control board.
- (5) Set up "0" to "F" using the address rotary switch on the indoor unit board when controlling the indoor unit with the multiple remote control.

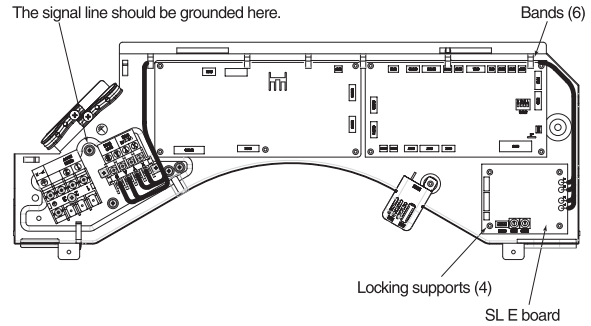


Connect grounding. Connect grounding for the power line to Ground ①, and grounding for the signal line to Ground ② or to the Ground on the indoor unit control box.



2. When connecting to the indoor unit control box (ceiling-concealed type and FDT type only):

- (1) Mount the SL E board in the control box using the locking supports.
- (2) Remove 6 bands from the box and put the wiring through the bands to be secured.



Electrical shock hazard make sure to turn the power off for servicing. Be cautious so that no abnormal force should be applied to the wiring. Do not let the SL E board hung by the wiring. Do not damage the board with a screwdriver. The board is sensitive to static electricity. Release the static electricity of your body before servicing. (You can do this by touching the control board which is grounded).

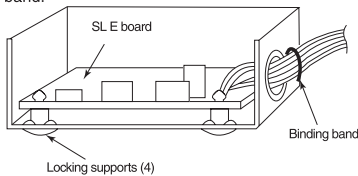
Location of installation

Install the device at the location where there are no electromagnetic waves nor where there is water and dust. The specified temperature range of the device is 0 to 40°C. Install the device at the location where the ambient temperature stays within the range. If it exceeds the specification, make sure to provide solution such as installing a cooling fan. When used outside of the range, it may cause abnormal operation.

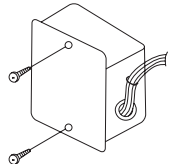
6 Installation

1. When using the metal box (mounted on the indoor unit / mounted on the back of the remote control):

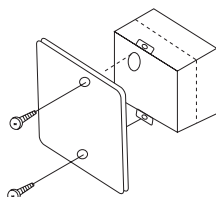
- (1) Mount the SL E board in the metal box using the locking supports.
- (2) Wiring should go through the provided grommet since then through the wiring to the hole on the Metal box. Secure the grommet after inserting the grommet into the Metal box as shown in below figure, then tie the wiring at the outlet of the unit using a binding band.



▲ When installed outside the indoor unit, put the metal cover on.



▲ When installed on the back of the remote control, mount it directly on the remote control bottom case.



7 Indicator display


Check the LED 3 (green) and LED 2 (red) on the SL E board for flashing.

| SL E board LEDs | | Inspection mode | Display on the integrated network control device |
|-----------------|----------|---|--|
| Red | Green | | |
| Off | Flashing | Normal communication | |
| Off | Off | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disconnection in the remote control communication line (X or Y) Short-circuit in the remote control communication line (between X and Y) Faulty indoor unit remote control power Faulty remote control communication circuit Faulty CPU on SL E board | No corresponding unit number |
| One flash | Flashing | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disconnection in the Superlink signal line (A or B) Short-circuit in the Superlink signal line (between A and B) Faulty Superlink signal circuit | |
| Two flashes | Flashing | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Faulty address setting for the SL E board (Set up the address for previous SL E board : more than 48 new SL E board : more than 128) | |
| Three flashes | Flashing | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SL E board parent not set up when used without a remote control Faulty remote control communication circuit | E1 |
| Four flashes | Flashing | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Address overlapping for the SL E board and the Superlink network connected indoor unit | E2 |
| Off | Flashing | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Number of connected devices exceeds the specification for the multiple indoor unit control | E10 |

8. TECHNICAL INFORMATION

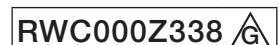
(1) Model SCM30ZS-W

| | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Information to identify the model(s) to which the information relates to: | | | | If function includes heating: Indicate the heating season the information relates to. Indicated values should relate to one heating season at a time. Include at least the heating season 'Average'. | | | |
| Indoor unit model name | | SRK15ZS-WF×2units | | Average(mandatory) | | Yes | |
| Outdoor unit model name | | SCM30ZS-W | | Warmer(if designated) | | Yes | |
| Function(indicate if present) | | | | Colder(if designated) | | | |
| cooling | | Yes | | | | | |
| heating | | Yes | | | | No | |
| Item | | | | Item | | | |
| symbol | | value | | symbol | | value | |
| unit | | | | class | | | |
| Design load | | | | Seasonal efficiency and energy efficiency class | | | |
| cooling | | Pdesignc | | SEER | | 8.60 A+++ | |
| heating / Average | | Pdesignh | | SCOP/A | | 4.80 A++ | |
| heating / Warmer | | Pdesignh | | SCOP/W | | 6.50 A+++ | |
| heating / Colder | | Pdesignh | | SCOP/C | | - - | |
| Declared capacity at outdoor temperature Tdesignh | | | | Back up heating capacity at outdoor temperature Tdesignh | | | |
| heating / Average (-10°C) | | Pdh | | heating / Average (-10°C) | | elbu | |
| | | 3.30 kW | | | | 0 kW | |
| heating / Warmer (2°C) | | Pdh | | heating / Warmer (2°C) | | elbu | |
| | | 4.70 kW | | | | 0 kW | |
| heating / Colder (-22°C) | | Pdh | | heating / Colder (-22°C) | | elbu | |
| | | - | | | | - | |
| Declared capacity for cooling, at indoor temperature 27(19)°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared energy efficiency ratio, at indoor temperature 27(19)°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=35°C | | Pdc | | EERd | | 5.77 | |
| | | 3.00 kW | | Tj=35°C | | EERd | |
| Tj=30°C | | Pdc | | | | 8.48 | |
| | | 2.21 kW | | Tj=30°C | | EERd | |
| Tj=25°C | | Pdc | | | | 12.45 | |
| | | 2.08 kW | | Tj=25°C | | EERd | |
| Tj=20°C | | Pdc | | | | 16.90 | |
| | | 2.08 kW | | Tj=20°C | | EERd | |
| Declared capacity for heating / Average season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared coefficient of performance / Average season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=-7°C | | Pdh | | COPd | | 3.30 | |
| | | 2.92 kW | | Tj=-7°C | | COPd | |
| Tj=2°C | | Pdh | | | | 4.70 | |
| | | 1.78 kW | | Tj=2°C | | COPd | |
| Tj=7°C | | Pdh | | | | 6.00 | |
| | | 1.14 kW | | Tj=7°C | | COPd | |
| Tj=12°C | | Pdh | | | | 8.30 | |
| | | 1.55 kW | | Tj=12°C | | COPd | |
| Tj=bivalent temperature | | Pdh | | | | 2.80 | |
| | | 3.30 kW | | Tj=bivalent temperature | | COPd | |
| Tj=operating limit | | Pdh | | | | 2.80 | |
| | | 3.30 kW | | Tj=operating limit | | COPd | |
| Declared capacity for heating / Warmer season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared coefficient of performance / Warmer season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=2°C | | Pdh | | COPd | | 3.53 | |
| | | 4.70 kW | | Tj=2°C | | COPd | |
| Tj=7°C | | Pdh | | | | 6.00 | |
| | | 3.02 kW | | Tj=7°C | | COPd | |
| Tj=12°C | | Pdh | | | | 8.28 | |
| | | 1.55 kW | | Tj=12°C | | COPd | |
| Tj=bivalent temperature | | Pdh | | | | 3.53 | |
| | | 4.70 kW | | Tj=bivalent temperature | | COPd | |
| Tj=operating limit | | Pdh | | | | 3.53 | |
| | | 4.70 kW | | Tj=operating limit | | COPd | |
| Declared capacity for heating / Colder season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared coefficient of performance / Colder season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=-7°C | | Pdh | | COPd | | - | |
| | | - | | Tj=-7°C | | COPd | |
| Tj=2°C | | Pdh | | | | - | |
| | | - | | Tj=2°C | | COPd | |
| Tj=7°C | | Pdh | | | | - | |
| | | - | | Tj=7°C | | COPd | |
| Tj=12°C | | Pdh | | | | - | |
| | | - | | Tj=12°C | | COPd | |
| Tj=bivalent temperature | | Pdh | | | | - | |
| | | - | | Tj=bivalent temperature | | COPd | |
| Tj=operating limit | | Pdh | | | | - | |
| | | - | | Tj=operating limit | | COPd | |
| Tj=-15°C | | Pdh | | | | - | |
| | | - | | Tj=-15°C | | COPd | |
| Bivalent temperature | | | | Operating limit temperature | | | |
| heating / Average | | Tbiv | | heating / Average | | Tol | |
| | | -10 °C | | | | -10 °C | |
| heating / Warmer | | Tbiv | | heating / Warmer | | Tol | |
| | | 2 °C | | | | 2 °C | |
| heating / Colder | | Tbiv | | heating / Colder | | Tol | |
| | | - | | | | - | |
| Cycling interval capacity | | | | Cycling interval efficiency | | | |
| for cooling | | Pcycc | | for cooling | | EERcyc | |
| | | - | | | | - | |
| for heating | | Pcyhc | | for heating | | COPcyc | |
| | | - | | | | - | |
| Degradation coefficient | | | | Degradation coefficient | | | |
| cooling | | Cdc | | heating | | Cdh | |
| | | 0.25 | | | | 0.25 | |
| Electric power input in power modes other than 'active mode' | | | | Annual electricity consumption | | | |
| off mode | | Poff | | cooling | | Qce | |
| | | 8 W | | | | 123 kWh/a | |
| standby mode | | Psb | | heating / Average | | Qhe | |
| | | 8 W | | | | 962 kWh/a | |
| thermostat-off mode | | Pto(cooling) | | heating / Warmer | | Qhe | |
| | | 18 W | | | | 1013 kWh/a | |
| crankcase heater mode | | Pto(heating) | | heating / colder | | Qhe | |
| | | 30 W | | | | - | |
| Pck | | 0 W | | | | - | |
| Capacity control(indicate one of three options) | | | | Other items | | | |
| fixed | | No | | Sound power level(indoor) | | Lwa | |
| | | No | | | | 48 dB(A) | |
| staged | | No | | Sound power level(outdoor) | | Lwa | |
| | | No | | | | 62 dB(A) | |
| variable | | Yes | | Global warming potential | | GWP | |
| | | Yes | | | | 675 kgCO ₂ eq. | |
| | | | | Rated air flow(indoor) | | 558 m ³ /h | |
| | | | | Rated air flow(outdoor) | | 1950 m ³ /h | |
| Contact details for obtaining more information | | | | Name and address of the manufacturer or of its authorised representative. | | | |
| (EU) | | MHIAE SERVICES B.V. | | (EU) | | MHIAE SERVICES B.V. | |
| | | Herikerbergweg 238, Luna Arena, 1101 CM Amsterdam, Netherlands/P.O.Box 23393 1100 DW Amsterdam, Netherlands | | (UK) | | Mitsubishi Heavy Industries Air-Conditioning Europe, Ltd. | |
| | | | | | | 5 The Square, Stockley Park, Uxbridge, Middlesex, UB11 1ET, United kingdom | |

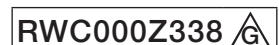
RWC000Z326 

(2) Model SCM41ZS-W

| | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|--|--|---|--|
| Information to identify the model(s) to which the information relates to: | | | | If function includes heating: Indicate the heating season the information relates to. Indicated values should relate to one heating season at a time. Include at least the heating season 'Average'. | | | |
| Indoor unit model name | | SRK15ZS-WF x 3units | | | | | |
| Outdoor unit model name | | SCM41ZS-W | | | | | |
| Function(indicate if present) | | | | Average(mandatory) | | | |
| cooling | | Yes | | Warmer(if designated) | | Yes | |
| heating | | Yes | | Colder(if designated) | | No | |
| Item | | | | Item | | | |
| | | symbol value unit | | | | symbol value class | |
| Design load | | | | Seasonal efficiency and energy efficiency class | | | |
| cooling | | Pdesignc 4.00 kW | | cooling | | SEER 9.20 A+++ | |
| heating / Average | | Pdesignh 3.40 kW | | heating / Average | | SCOP/A 4.60 A++ | |
| heating / Warmer | | Pdesignh 5.10 kW | | heating / Warmer | | SCOP/W 6.40 A+++ | |
| heating / Colder | | Pdesignh - kW | | heating / Colder | | SCOP/C - - | |
| Declared capacity at outdoor temperature Tdesignh | | | | Back up heating capacity at outdoor temperature Tdesignh | | | |
| heating / Average (-10°C) | | Pdh 3.40 kW | | heating / Average (-10°C) | | elbu 0 kW | |
| heating / Warmer (2°C) | | Pdh 5.10 kW | | heating / Warmer (2°C) | | elbu 0 kW | |
| heating / Colder (-22°C) | | Pdh - kW | | heating / Colder (-22°C) | | elbu - kW | |
| Declared capacity for cooling, at indoor temperature 27(19)°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared energy efficiency ratio, at indoor temperature 27(19)°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=35°C | | Pdc 4.00 kW | | Tj=35°C | | EERd 5.56 | |
| Tj=30°C | | Pdc 2.95 kW | | Tj=30°C | | EERd 8.40 | |
| Tj=25°C | | Pdc 2.19 kW | | Tj=25°C | | EERd 13.40 | |
| Tj=20°C | | Pdc 2.22 kW | | Tj=20°C | | EERd 19.40 | |
| Declared capacity for heating / Average season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared coefficient of performance / Average season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=-7°C | | Pdh 3.00 kW | | Tj=-7°C | | COPd 3.20 | |
| Tj=2°C | | Pdh 1.83 kW | | Tj=2°C | | COPd 4.52 | |
| Tj=7°C | | Pdh 1.18 kW | | Tj=7°C | | COPd 5.70 | |
| Tj=12°C | | Pdh 1.42 kW | | Tj=12°C | | COPd 7.70 | |
| Tj=bivalent temperature | | Pdh 3.40 kW | | Tj=bivalent temperature | | COPd 2.70 | |
| Tj=operating limit | | Pdh 3.40 kW | | Tj=operating limit | | COPd 2.70 | |
| Declared capacity for heating / Warmer season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared coefficient of performance / Warmer season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=2°C | | Pdh 5.10 kW | | Tj=2°C | | COPd 3.67 | |
| Tj=7°C | | Pdh 3.28 kW | | Tj=7°C | | COPd 6.00 | |
| Tj=12°C | | Pdh 1.46 kW | | Tj=12°C | | COPd 7.71 | |
| Tj=bivalent temperature | | Pdh 5.10 kW | | Tj=bivalent temperature | | COPd 3.67 | |
| Tj=operating limit | | Pdh 5.10 kW | | Tj=operating limit | | COPd 3.67 | |
| Declared capacity for heating / Colder season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared coefficient of performance / Colder season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=-7°C | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=-7°C | | COPd - | |
| Tj=2°C | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=2°C | | COPd - | |
| Tj=7°C | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=7°C | | COPd - | |
| Tj=12°C | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=12°C | | COPd - | |
| Tj=bivalent temperature | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=bivalent temperature | | COPd - | |
| Tj=operating limit | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=operating limit | | COPd - | |
| Tj=-15°C | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=-15°C | | COPd - | |
| Bivalent temperature | | | | Operating limit temperature | | | |
| heating / Average | | Tbiv -10 °C | | heating / Average | | Tol -10 °C | |
| heating / Warmer | | Tbiv 2 °C | | heating / Warmer | | Tol 2 °C | |
| heating / Colder | | Tbiv - °C | | heating / Colder | | Tol - °C | |
| Cycling interval capacity | | | | Cycling interval efficiency | | | |
| for cooling | | Pcycc - kW | | for cooling | | EERcyc - | |
| for heating | | Pcyh - kW | | for heating | | COPcyc - | |
| Degradation coefficient | | | | Degradation coefficient | | | |
| cooling | | Cdc 0.25 | | heating | | Cdh 0.25 | |
| Electric power input in power modes other than 'active mode' | | | | Annual electricity consumption | | | |
| off mode | | Poff 10 W | | cooling | | Qce 153 kWh/a | |
| standby mode | | Psb 10 W | | heating / Average | | Qhe 1034 kWh/a | |
| thermostat-off mode | | Pto(cooling) 25 W | | heating / Warmer | | Qhe 1116 kWh/a | |
| crankcase heater mode | | Pto(heating) 35 W | | heating / colder | | Qhe - kWh/a | |
| | | Pck 0 W | | | | | |
| Capacity control(indicate one of three options) | | | | Other items | | | |
| fixed | | No | | Sound power level(indoor) | | Lwa 48 dB(A) | |
| staged | | No | | Sound power level(outdoor) | | Lwa 62 dB(A) | |
| variable | | Yes | | Global warming potential | | GWP 675 kgCO ₂ eq. | |
| | | | | Rated air flow(indoor) | | 558 m ³ /h | |
| | | | | Rated air flow(outdoor) | | 2460 m ³ /h | |
| Contact details for obtaining more information | | | | Name and address of the manufacturer or of its authorised representative. | | | |
| (EU) | | MIAE SERVICES B.V. | | (EU) | | Herikerbergweg 238, Luna ArenA, 1101 CM Amsterdam, Netherlands/P.O.Box 23393 1100 DW Amsterdam, Netherlands | |
| (UK) | | Mitsubishi Heavy Industries Air-Conditioning Europe, Ltd. | | (UK) | | 5 The Square, Stockley Park, Uxbridge, Middlesex, UB11 1ET, United kingdom | |



| | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|--|--|--------------------------------------|--|
| Information to identify the model(s) to which the information relates to: | | | | If function includes heating: Indicate the heating season the information relates to. Indicated values should relate to one heating season at a time. Include at least the heating season 'Average'. | | | |
| Indoor unit model name | | SRK20ZS-WF x 2units | | | | | |
| Outdoor unit model name | | SCM41ZS-W | | | | | |
| Function(indicate if present) | | | | Average(mandatory) | | | |
| cooling | | Yes | | Warmer(if designated) | | Yes | |
| heating | | Yes | | Colder(if designated) | | No | |
| Item | | | | Item | | | |
| | | symbol value unit | | | | symbol value class | |
| Design load | | | | Seasonal efficiency and energy efficiency class | | | |
| cooling | | Pdesignc 4.00 kW | | cooling | | SEER 8.40 A++ | |
| heating / Average | | Pdesignh 3.40 kW | | heating / Average | | SCOP/A 4.50 A+ | |
| heating / Warmer | | Pdesignh 4.80 kW | | heating / Warmer | | SCOP/W 6.10 A+++ | |
| heating / Colder | | Pdesignh - kW | | heating / Colder | | SCOP/C - - | |
| Declared capacity at outdoor temperature Tdesignh | | | | Back up heating capacity at outdoor temperature Tdesignh | | | |
| heating / Average (-10°C) | | Pdh 3.40 kW | | heating / Average (-10°C) | | elbu 0 kW | |
| heating / Warmer (2°C) | | Pdh 4.80 kW | | heating / Warmer (2°C) | | elbu 0 kW | |
| heating / Colder (-22°C) | | Pdh - kW | | heating / Colder (-22°C) | | elbu - kW | |
| Declared capacity for cooling, at indoor temperature 27(19)°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared energy efficiency ratio, at indoor temperature 27(19)°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=35°C | | Pdc 4.00 kW | | Tj=35°C | | EERd 4.40 | |
| Tj=30°C | | Pdc 2.95 kW | | Tj=30°C | | EERd 7.30 | |
| Tj=25°C | | Pdc 2.07 kW | | Tj=25°C | | EERd 11.60 | |
| Tj=20°C | | Pdc 2.12 kW | | Tj=20°C | | EERd 16.30 | |
| Declared capacity for heating / Average season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared coefficient of performance / Average season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=-7°C | | Pdh 3.00 kW | | Tj=-7°C | | COPd 3.30 | |
| Tj=2°C | | Pdh 1.83 kW | | Tj=2°C | | COPd 4.36 | |
| Tj=7°C | | Pdh 1.18 kW | | Tj=7°C | | COPd 5.40 | |
| Tj=12°C | | Pdh 1.45 kW | | Tj=12°C | | COPd 7.90 | |
| Tj=bivalent temperature | | Pdh 3.40 kW | | Tj=bivalent temperature | | COPd 2.60 | |
| Tj=operating limit | | Pdh 3.40 kW | | Tj=operating limit | | COPd 2.60 | |
| Declared capacity for heating / Warmer season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared coefficient of performance / Warmer season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=2°C | | Pdh 4.80 kW | | Tj=2°C | | COPd 3.30 | |
| Tj=7°C | | Pdh 3.09 kW | | Tj=7°C | | COPd 5.40 | |
| Tj=12°C | | Pdh 1.37 kW | | Tj=12°C | | COPd 7.80 | |
| Tj=bivalent temperature | | Pdh 4.80 kW | | Tj=bivalent temperature | | COPd 3.30 | |
| Tj=operating limit | | Pdh 4.80 kW | | Tj=operating limit | | COPd 3.30 | |
| Declared capacity for heating / Colder season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | | Declared coefficient of performance / Colder season, at indoor temperature 20°C and outdoor temperature Tj | | | |
| Tj=-7°C | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=-7°C | | COPd - | |
| Tj=2°C | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=2°C | | COPd - | |
| Tj=7°C | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=7°C | | COPd - | |
| Tj=12°C | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=12°C | | COPd - | |
| Tj=bivalent temperature | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=bivalent temperature | | COPd - | |
| Tj=operating limit | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=operating limit | | COPd - | |
| Tj=-15°C | | Pdh - kW | | Tj=-15°C | | COPd - | |
| Bivalent temperature | | | | Operating limit temperature | | | |
| heating / Average | | Tbiv -10 °C | | heating / Average | | Tol -10 °C | |
| heating / Warmer | | Tbiv 2 °C | | heating / Warmer | | Tol 2 °C | |
| heating / Colder | | Tbiv - °C | | heating / Colder | | Tol - °C | |
| Cycling interval capacity | | | | Cycling interval efficiency | | | |
| for cooling | | Pccyc - kW | | for cooling | | EERcyc - | |
| for heating | | Pchyc - kW | | for heating | | COPcyc - | |
| Degradation coefficient | | | | Degradation coefficient | | | |
| cooling | | Cdc 0.25 | | heating | | Cdh 0.25 | |
| Electric power input in power modes other than 'active mode' | | | | Annual electricity consumption | | | |
| off mode | | Poff 8 W | | cooling | | Qce 167 kWh/a | |
| standby mode | | Psb 8 W | | heating / Average | | Qhe 1059 kWh/a | |
| thermostat-off mode | | Pto(cooling) 20 W | | heating / Warmer | | Qhe 1102 kWh/a | |
| crankcase heater mode | | Pto(heating) 30 W | | heating / colder | | Qhe - kWh/a | |
| | | Pck 0 W | | | | | |
| Capacity control(indicate one of three options) | | | | Other items | | | |
| fixed | | No | | Sound power level(indoor) | | Lwa 48 dB(A) | |
| staged | | No | | Sound power level(outdoor) | | Lwa 62 dB(A) | |
| variable | | Yes | | Global warming potential | | GWP 675 kgCO ₂ eq. | |
| | | | | Rated air flow(indoor) | | 558 m ³ /h | |
| | | | | Rated air flow(outdoor) | | 2460 m ³ /h | |
| Contact details for obtaining more information | | Name and address of the manufacturer or of its authorised representative. | | | | | |
| (EU) | | MhIAE SERVICES B.V. Herikerbergweg 238, Luna ArenA, 1101 CM Amsterdam, Netherlands/P.O.Box 23393 1100 DW Amsterdam, Netherlands | | | | | |
| (UK) | | Mitsubishi Heavy Industries Air-Conditioning Europe, Ltd. 5 The Square, Stockley Park, Uxbridge, Middlesex, UB11 1ET, United kingdom | | | | | |



INVERTER MULTI-SPLIT SYSTEM RESIDENTIAL AIR-CONDITIONERS



MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES THERMAL SYSTEMS, LTD.

2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, 100-8332, Japan
<http://www.mhi-mth.co.jp/en/>

Because of our policy of continuous improvement, we reserve the right to make changes in all specifications without notice.

© Copyright MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES THERMAL SYSTEMS, LTD.